

<sup>1</sup> © Igor V. Shevchenko (2022) These notes are provided for the personal study of students  
<sup>2</sup> taking this module. The distribution of copies in part or whole is not permitted.

### <sup>3</sup> Contents

<sup>4</sup> <b>0 Module logistics &amp; Coursework guidelines</b>	<sup>4</sup>
<sup>5</sup> <b>1 The Euler method (Forward Euler method)</b>	<sup>7</sup>
1.1 Local truncation error . . . . .	8
<sup>7</sup> <b>2 Taylor series methods</b>	<b>14</b>
<sup>8</sup> <b>3 Linear multistep methods</b>	<b>18</b>
3.1 The general form of linear multistep methods . . . . .	18
3.2 Convergence of linear multistep methods . . . . .	18
3.3 The Trapezoidal rule . . . . .	19
3.4 The local truncation error of the Trapezoidal rule . . . . .	20
3.5 The global error of the Trapezoidal rule . . . . .	20
3.6 How to develop the most accurate one-step method . . . . .	23
<sup>15</sup> <b>4 The 2-step Adams-Basforth method, AB(2)</b>	<b>25</b>
4.1 Derivation of the AB(2) method via Lagrange polynomials . . . . .	26
4.2 The local truncation error of the AB(2) method . . . . .	27
4.3 The global error of the AB(2) method . . . . .	28
<sup>19</sup> <b>5 The 2-step Adams-Moulton method, AM(2)</b>	<b>30</b>
5.1 Derivation of the AM(2) method via Lagrange polynomials . . . . .	31
5.2 The local truncation error of the AM(2) method . . . . .	32
5.3 The global error of the AM(2) method . . . . .	33
<sup>23</sup> <b>6 Consistency of linear multistep methods</b>	<b>35</b>
6.1 Is the Euler method consistent? . . . . .	35
6.2 What are the conditions for the 1-step LMM to be consistent? . . . . .	36
6.2.1 The $\theta$ -method . . . . .	36
6.3 What are the conditions for the 2-step LMM to be consistent? . . . . .	36
6.4 What are the conditions for the 3-step LMM to be consistent? . . . . .	37
6.5 How to find a 2-step LMM with the highest order of consistency . . . . .	37
6.6 Consistency in terms of characteristic polynomials . . . . .	39
6.7 Consistency and convergence . . . . .	39
<sup>32</sup> <b>7 Linear difference equations (LDEs)</b>	<b>42</b>
7.1 First-order inhomogeneous LDE $x_{n+1} = ax_n + b$ . . . . .	42
7.2 First-order inhomogeneous LDE $x_{n+1} = ax_n + bk^n$ . . . . .	43
7.3 Second-order homogeneous LDE $x_{n+2} + ax_{n+1} + bx_n = 0$ . . . . .	44
<sup>36</sup> <b>8 Convergence and zero stability</b>	<b>45</b>
8.1 Back to consistent but divergent LMM $x_{n+2} + 4x_{n+1} - 5x_n = h(4f_{n+1} + 2f_n)$ . . .	45
8.2 Convergence of the 3-step LMM . . . . .	46
8.3 Consistency and zero-stability in error analysis . . . . .	47

<b>9</b>	<b>Absolute stability</b>	<b>49</b>
41	9.1 Homogeneous equation $x' = \lambda x$ . . . . .	53
42	9.2 Region and interval of absolute stability . . . . .	53
<b>10</b>	<b>The Boundary Locus Method and Absolute Stability for systems</b>	<b>56</b>
44	10.1 The Boundary Locus Method . . . . .	56
45	10.2 Absolute Stability for systems . . . . .	57
<b>11</b>	<b>Implicit LMMs and nonlinear equations</b>	<b>60</b>
47	11.1 Fixed Point Iteration method . . . . .	60
48	11.2 The Newton method . . . . .	61
49	11.3 Predictor-corrector methods . . . . .	61
50	11.3.1 $P(EC)^k E$ (Predict Evaluate Correct Evaluate) . . . . .	62
51	11.3.2 $P(EC)^k$ (Predict Evaluate Correct) . . . . .	62
<b>12</b>	<b>Improved approximations</b>	<b>67</b>
53	12.1 The Milne estimator . . . . .	67
<b>13</b>	<b>Extrapolation</b>	<b>69</b>
<b>14</b>	<b>Runge-Kutta methods</b>	<b>73</b>
56	14.1 The first Runge-Kutta method . . . . .	73
57	14.2 The local truncation error of the 2-stage RK method . . . . .	74
58	14.3 The general form of RK methods . . . . .	75
59	14.4 RK methods for systems of ODEs . . . . .	76
<b>15</b>	<b>Order conditions for explicit RK methods</b>	<b>77</b>
61	15.1 1-stage RK methods . . . . .	77
62	15.2 2-stage RK methods . . . . .	77
63	15.3 3-stage RK methods . . . . .	78
<b>16</b>	<b>Absolute stability of explicit RK methods</b>	<b>82</b>
65	16.1 Stability function . . . . .	82
66	16.2 Interval of absolute stability . . . . .	82
67	16.3 The region of absolute stability . . . . .	83
68	16.4 Stability function for 3-stage third-order RK methods . . . . .	86
69	16.5 Stability function for s-stage RK methods . . . . .	87
70	16.6 Absolute stability of RK methods for systems . . . . .	88
<b>17</b>	<b>Implicit RK methods</b>	<b>90</b>
72	17.1 Order conditions for 2-stage implicit RK methods . . . . .	90
73	17.2 Absolute stability of 1-stage implicit RK methods . . . . .	91
74	17.3 Absolute stability of 2-stage implicit RK methods . . . . .	92
<b>18</b>	<b>Adaptive step size control</b>	<b>93</b>
76	18.1 How to choose the step size? . . . . .	93
77	18.2 Taylor series methods . . . . .	94
78	18.3 One-step LMMs . . . . .	96
79	18.4 Runge-Kutta methods . . . . .	97
<b>19</b>	<b>Boundary value problems</b>	<b>100</b>
81	19.1 The shooting method . . . . .	100

82	19.1.1 Linear case . . . . .	100
83	19.1.2 Nonlinear case . . . . .	101
84	<b>20 Finite Difference Method</b>	<b>104</b>
85	20.1 1D case . . . . .	104
86	20.2 The method of undetermined coefficients . . . . .	105
87	<b>21 Partial differential equations</b>	<b>107</b>
88	21.1 Von Neumann stability analysis (Fourier stability analysis) . . . . .	107
89	21.1.1 The Lax substitution . . . . .	108
90	21.1.2 Leap-frog scheme . . . . .	109
91	21.1.3 The Backward Euler method . . . . .	109
92	21.2 The matrix stability analysis . . . . .	110
93	<b>22 The energy method (The method of energy inequalities) by example</b>	<b>111</b>

94 **Lecture 0 Module logistics & Coursework guidelines**

95 **Module title**

96 Numerical solution of Ordinary Differential equations

98 **Brief description**

99 The module is an introductory course in numerical methods for ordinary differential equations. The  
100 purpose of this course is to learn how to develop and analyse your own numerical methods as well as  
101 to provide you with theoretical knowledge and practical skills to lay solid foundations necessary to  
102 advance in scientific computing. In this course we will be mostly focused on the numerical solution  
103 of initial value problems for ordinary differential equations. In addition we will consider boundary  
104 value problems for both ordinary and partial differential equations.

105 **Learning outcomes**

107 On the successful completion of the module you will be able to

- 108 • use classical numerical methods for ordinary differential equations
- 109 • analyse different properties of numerical methods (accuracy, stability, etc.)
- 110 • develop your own methods with prescribed properties
- 111 • compare different methods with respect to accuracy, stability, computational and space com-  
112 plexity
- 113 • develop efficient numerical algorithms
- 114 • apply numerical methods to solve boundary value problems for partial differential equations

115 **Brief syllabus**

- 116 • Taylor series methods
- 117 • Linear multi-step methods
- 118 • Improved approximations
- 119 • Runge-Kutta methods
- 120 • Adaptive step size control
- 121 • Boundary value problems for ordinary differential equations
- 122 • Introduction to Finite Difference Method
- 123 • Introduction to boundary value problems for partial differential equations

124 **Pattern of teaching and teaching approach**

125 Two (four) hours of lectures followed by a one-hour tutorial (a two-week coursework) the goal of  
126 which is to ensure that students can use their knowledge and skills in analysis of numerical methods  
127 and solving practical problems.

128 **Strategy for assessment and feedback**

130 Your performance is assessed through tutorials and courseworks. Feedback is given in written form  
131 and in person.

132 **Prerequisites**

134 Basic knowledge of MATLAB (or Python) and theory of ordinary differential equations is expected.

135 **Recommended texts**

- 137 • E. Coddington and N. Levinson, Theory of ordinary differential equations.
- 138 • E. Ince Ordinary differential equations.
- 139 • E. Hairer et al., Solving ordinary differential equations I. Nonstiff problems.

- 140     ● J. Butcher, Numerical methods for ordinary differential equations.  
141     ● J. Lambert, Numerical methods for ordinary differential systems.  
142     ● H. Keller, Numerical solution of two point boundary value problems.

143 I would recommend to take this course if you want to progress into numerical methods for PDEs,  
144 numerical analysis, and simulations of real-life problems.

145  
146 Note that all material below is lecture notes *not lecture slides*, and therefore it can solely be used with-  
147 out lecture recordings to master the course. Feel free to contact me at i.shevchenko@imperial.ac.uk  
148 if you think the lecture notes are missing or lacking something, or there is a way to make them  
149 better. I can do it on the fly so that you can benefit from it during the course.

150  
151 **Registration for the module**

152 By submitting Coursework 1 you confirm to take the module for credit.

153

## Coursework Guidelines

154 Below is a set of guidelines to help you understand what coursework is and how to improve it.

155

### 156 Coursework

- 157 • The coursework requires more than just following what has been done in the lectures, some  
amount of individual work is expected.
- 158 • The coursework report should describe in a concise, clear, and coherent way of what you did,  
how you did it, and what results you have.
- 159 • The report should be understandable to the reader with the mathematical background, but  
160 unfamiliar with your current work.
- 161 • Do not bloat the report by paraphrasing or presenting the results in different forms.
- 162 • Use high-quality and carefully constructed figures with captions and annotated axis, put figures  
163 where they belong.
- 164 • All numerical solutions should be presented as graphs.
- 165 • Use tables only if they are more explanatory than figures. The maximum table length is a  
half page.
- 166 • All figures and tables should be embedded in the report. The report should contain all  
167 discussions and explanations of the methods and algorithms, and interpretations of your results  
168 and further conclusions.
- 169 • The report should be typeset in LaTeX or Word Editor and submitted as a single pdf-file.
- 170 • The maximum length of the report is ten A4-pages (additional 3 pages is allowed for Year 4  
171 students); the problem sheet is not included in these ten pages.
- 172 • Do not include any codes in the report.
- 173 • Marks are not based solely on correctness. The results must be described and interpreted.  
174 The presentation and discussion is as important as the correctness of the results.

175

### Codes

- 176 • You cannot use third party numerical software in the coursework.
- 177 • The code you developed should be well-structured and organised, as well as properly com-  
mented to allow the reader to understand what the code does and how it works.
- 178 • All codes should run out of the box and require no modification to generate the results  
179 presented in the report.

180

### Submission

- 181 • The coursework submission must be made via Turnitin on your Blackboard page. You must  
complete and submit the coursework anonymously, **the deadline is 1pm on the date of  
182 submission** (unless stated otherwise). The coursework should be submitted via two sep-  
arate Turnitin drop boxes as a pdf-file of the report and a zip-file containing MATLAB  
183 (m-files only) or Python (py-files only) code. The code should be in the directory named  
CID\_Coursework#. The report and the zip-file should be named as CID\_Coursework#.pdf  
and CID\_Coursework#.zip , respectively. The executable MATLAB (or Python) scripts for  
184 the exercises should be named as follows: exercise1.m, exercise2.m, etc.

<sup>193</sup> **Lecture 1 The Euler method (Forward Euler method)**

<sup>194</sup> Let us consider an initial value problem (IVP) of the form

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}), \quad \mathbf{x}(t_0) = \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N], \quad \mathbf{x}' := \frac{d\mathbf{x}}{dt}, \quad \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(t), \quad (1)$$

<sup>195</sup> with  $\mathbf{f} : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^d \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^d$  being a given function,  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$  is a given initial condition, and  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^d$ , where  
<sup>196</sup>  $d \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  (positive integers). Throughout the course we assume that all functions used are continuous  
<sup>197</sup> functions differentiable as many times as needed.

<sup>198</sup> We start from the simplest numerical method proposed by Leonard Euler in 1770-ish, and named  
<sup>199</sup> after his name afterwards. The method is based on a simple idea. Let us suppose that a particle  $\mathbf{x}$   
<sup>200</sup> is moving in such a way that at time  $t_0$  its position,  $\mathbf{x}_0$ , and velocity,  $\mathbf{v}_0$  are known. The simple idea  
<sup>201</sup> is that within an extremely short period of time,  $\Delta t = t_1 - t_0$ , the velocity at time  $t_1$ ,  $\mathbf{v}_1$ , has no  
<sup>202</sup> time to change significantly from the initial velocity  $\mathbf{v}_0$  (i.e.  $\mathbf{v}_1 \approx \mathbf{v}_0$ ), and thus the change in the  
<sup>203</sup> position of the particle,  $\Delta \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_0$ , is approximately equal to the change in time,  $\Delta t$ , multiplied  
<sup>204</sup> by the initial velocity  $\mathbf{v}_0$ , i.e.

$$\Delta \mathbf{x} = \Delta t \mathbf{v}_0. \quad (2)$$

<sup>205</sup> Let us rewrite (2) as

$$\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_0 = (t_1 - t_0) \mathbf{v}_0 \quad (3)$$

<sup>206</sup> to find

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = \mathbf{x}_0 + (t_1 - t_0) \mathbf{v}_0. \quad (4)$$

<sup>207</sup> We assume that  $\mathbf{v}_1$  can be found accurately enough from  $\mathbf{x}_1$  and  $t_1$  using the differential equation  
<sup>208</sup>  $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{v}(t)$  which describes the motion of particle  $\mathbf{x}$ . If we know  $\mathbf{v}_1$  then we can find the position of  
<sup>209</sup> the particle at time  $t_2$ :

$$\mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{x}_1 + (t_2 - t_1) \mathbf{v}_1. \quad (5)$$

<sup>210</sup> Finally, for  $t_n$  the position of the particle is given by

$$\mathbf{x}_n = \mathbf{x}_{n-1} + (t_n - t_{n-1}) \mathbf{v}_{n-1}, \quad (6)$$

<sup>211</sup> or

$$\mathbf{x}_n = \mathbf{x}_{n-1} + \Delta t \mathbf{v}_{n-1}. \quad (7)$$

<sup>212</sup> Thus, for IVP (1) we have

$$\text{Euler method (Forward Euler method): } \mathbf{x}_n = \mathbf{x}_{n-1} + h \mathbf{f}_{n-1}, \quad \mathbf{x}_0 = \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \quad (8)$$

<sup>213</sup> or

$$\text{Euler method (Forward Euler method): } \mathbf{x}_{n+1} = \mathbf{x}_n + h \mathbf{f}_n, \quad \mathbf{x}_0 = \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \quad (9)$$

<sup>214</sup> where  $h := \Delta t$ ,  $\mathbf{f}_n := \mathbf{f}(t_n, \mathbf{x}_n)$ . Equation (9) is known as the Euler method or the Forward Euler  
<sup>215</sup> method.

<sup>216</sup> **Example 1.1 (Euler’s method for a scalar equation)** Let’s consider the initial value problem  
<sup>217</sup> for the scalar equation

$$x' = (1 - 2t)x, \quad x(0) = 1, \quad t \in [0, 1]. \quad (10)$$

<sup>218</sup> In order to compute the solution of (10) with the Euler method, we have to define the time step  $h$ .

<sup>219</sup> Let it be  $h = 0.1$ . Our next step is to apply the Euler method (9) to (10). For this, we write

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_n, \quad f_n := (1 - 2t_n)x_n, \quad x_0 = 1. \quad (11)$$

220 Since the initial condition and the right hand side are known, we can compute  $x_1$  (this is the position  
221 of the particle at time  $t_1 = h = 0.1$ ):

$$x(0.1) = x(0) + 0.1(1 - 2 \cdot 0)x(0) = 1.10. \quad (12)$$

222 Having computed the position of the particle at time  $t_1 = 0.1$ , we can now compute its position at  
223 time  $t_2 = 0.2$ :

$$x(0.2) = x(0.1) + 0.1(1 - 2 \cdot 0.1)x(0.1) \approx 1.19. \quad (13)$$

224 For  $t_3 = 0.3$  we have

$$x(0.3) = x(0.2) + 0.1(1 - 2 \cdot 0.2)x(0.2) \approx 1.26. \quad (14)$$

225 For  $t_{10} = 1.0$  we have

$$x(1.0) = x(0.9) + 0.1(1 - 2 \cdot 0.9)x(0.9) \approx 1.1. \quad (15)$$

226 Acting in the same vein, we can compute the particle position at any given moment in time. ▲

227 **Example 1.2 (Euler’s method for higher order ODEs and systems of ODEs)** Consider the sec-  
228 ond order ODE

$$x'' + x = 7, \quad x(t_0) = 10, \quad x'(t_0) = 20, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (16)$$

229 In order to apply Euler’s method to (16), we turn this equation into a second order system of first  
230 order ODEs by substituting  $x = u$  and  $x' = v$  into (16)

$$\begin{cases} u' = v, \\ v' = 7 - u. \end{cases} \quad (17)$$

231 and into the initial conditions:

$$u(t_0) = 10, \quad v(t_0) = 20. \quad (18)$$

232 Then, the Euler method for IVP (17)-(18) reads

$$\mathbf{y}_{n+1} = \mathbf{y}_n + h\mathbf{f}_n, \quad \mathbf{y}_n = \begin{pmatrix} u_n \\ v_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{f}_n = \begin{pmatrix} v_n \\ 7 - u_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{y}_0 = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 20 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (19)$$

233

▲

234 Although we have found the numerical solution with the Euler method, this solution is of no  
235 value to us if the difference between it and the exact solution is too large. It brings us to a series of  
236 important definitions.

## 237 1.1 Local truncation error

238 Let us consider the Taylor expansion of the exact solution to IVP (9):

$$x(t+h) = x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3). \quad (20)$$

239 Setting  $t = t_n$  in (20) and taking into account that  $t_{n+1} = t_n + h$  we have

$$x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + hx'(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t_n) + \mathcal{O}(h^3). \quad (21)$$

240 **Definition 1.1 (Local truncation error (LTE) and error constant)** *The local truncation error*

241 of order  $p > 0$  is the difference between the numerical,  $x_{n+1}$ , and exact,  $x(t_{n+1})$ , solutions

$$x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} = h^p C_p \frac{d^p x}{dt^p} = \mathcal{O}(h^p). \quad (22)$$

242 The constant  $C_p$  is known as the error constant.

243 **Definition 1.2 (Global error)** The difference

$$e_n = x(t_n) - x_n \quad (23)$$

244 between the exact solution,  $x(t_n)$ , and the numerical solution,  $x_n$ , is called the global error at time 245  $t = t_n$ .

246 Let us get back to the question: how accurate is the numerical solution we have found? In order 247 to answer it, we first compute the exact solution of equation (10), which is  $x(t) = e^{-t(t-1)}$ , and 248 than find the global error, as well as another useful quantity called the constant of proportionality 249  $|e_n|/h$ .

$h$	$x(t_n)$	$x_n$	$ e_n $	$ e_n /h$
0.1	1.0	1.1	0.1	1.0
0.05	1.0	1.05	0.05	1.0
0.025	1.0	1.025	0.025	1.0
0.0125	1.0	1.0125	0.0125	1.0

Table 1: Dependence of the global error,  $|e_n|$ , and the constant of proportionality,  $|e_n|/h$ , on the time step,  $h$ , for Example 1.1.

250 As can be seen from Table 1, the global error decreases as  $h \rightarrow 0$  that suggests that the method 251 converges to the exact solution.

252 **Definition 1.3 (Convergence)** A numerical method is said to converge to the exact solution  $x(t)$  253 of a given problem at time  $t = t_n$  if the global error

$$|e_n| = |x(t_n) - x_n| \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0. \quad (24)$$

254

255 In other words, the numerical solution tends to the exact solution as the time step becomes increasingly small. It is important to note that a numerical method is useless if it does not converge. 256

257 **Definition 1.4 (Order of convergence)** A numerical method is said to converge with order  $p$  if

$$e_n = \mathcal{O}(h^p), \quad p > 0. \quad (25)$$

258 Getting back to Table 1, we notice that the constant of proportionality is 1 thus showing that the 259 global error is proportional to  $h$ . In other words, in order to reduce the error by a factor of 10 one 260 should reduce the time step by a factor of 10. If the constant of proportionality is known than we 261 can compute the number of time steps needed to achieve a given accuracy. For example, in order 262 for the Euler method to get  $|e_n| \approx 0.001$  at time  $t_n = 1$ , the method will take around 1000 time 263 steps. Namely, since  $|e_n| \approx 0.001$  and  $|e_n|/h = 1.0$  then  $1.0h \approx 0.001 \Rightarrow h \approx 0.001$ . On the other 264 hand,  $t_n = nh = 1 \Rightarrow n = 1/h \approx 1000$ , where  $n$  is the number of time steps.

**Theorem 1.1 (Convergence of the Euler method for the linear IVP)**

*The Euler method for the linear IVP*

$$x' = \lambda x + g(t), \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [0, t_N], \quad (26)$$

where  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ ,  $g(t) \in C^1$ , and  $g(t_n) = g_n$  for all  $t_n \in [0, t_N]$  converges, and the global error is bounded from above:

$$|e_N| \leq Bh, \quad B = \text{const} > 0. \quad (27)$$

269

270 **Proof.** The Euler method for the linear IVP (26) is given by

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h(\lambda x_n + g(t_n)) = (1 + \hat{h})x_n + hg(t_n), \quad x_0 = \alpha, \quad t_i := ih, \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N, \quad (28)$$

271 where  $\hat{h} := h\lambda$ . In order to study the convergence of the Euler method, we have to study the  
272 behavior of the global error. For doing so, we Taylor expand the exact solution of (26) up to the  
273 second order

$$\begin{aligned} x(t_{n+1}) &= x(t_n) + hx'(t_n) &+ R \\ &= x(t_n) + h(\lambda x(t_n) + g(t_n)) &+ R, \end{aligned} \quad (29)$$

274 where  $R = \mathcal{O}(h^2)$ . In accordance with the definition of the global error above, the global error  
275 is given by the difference between the exact solution,  $x(t_{n+1})$ , and the numerical solution,  $x_{n+1}$ ,  
276 namely

$$\begin{aligned} e_{n+1} &= x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} \\ &= (1 + \hat{h})(x(t_n) - x_n) &+ R \\ &= (1 + \hat{h})e_n &+ R. \end{aligned} \quad (30)$$

Equation (30) tells us how the global error at time  $t_{n+1}$  depends on *the propagated error*

$$(1 + \hat{h})e_n$$

277 and the local truncation error given by the reminder  $R$ .

278 For  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N - 1$  we find

$$\begin{aligned} e_0 &= x(t_0) - x_0 = 0, \\ e_1 &= R_1, \\ e_2 &= (1 + \hat{h})e_1 + R_2 = (1 + \hat{h})R_1 + R_2, \\ e_3 &= (1 + \hat{h})e_2 + R_3 = (1 + \hat{h})^2R_1 + (1 + \hat{h})R_2 + R_3, \\ &\dots \\ e_N &= \sum_{i=1}^N (1 + \hat{h})^{N-i}R_i. \end{aligned} \quad (31)$$

279 The error in the initial condition is zero, since the initial condition is known exactly.

280 The next step is to estimate  $|e_N|$ . In order to do that we use the following inequality

$$|1 + \hat{h}| \leq 1 + |\hat{h}| \leq e^{|\hat{h}|}. \quad (32)$$

281 Exponentiating (32) to the power of  $(N - i)$  gives

$$|1 + \hat{h}|^{N-i} \leq e^{|\hat{h}|(N-i)}. \quad (33)$$

<sup>282</sup> On the other hand, we have

$$e^{|\hat{h}|(N-i)} \leq e^{|\lambda|t_{N-i}} \leq e^{|\lambda|t_N}, \text{ because } t_{N-i} \leq t_N \text{ for } i \in [1, N]. \quad (34)$$

<sup>283</sup> Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} |e_N| &\leq \sum_{i=1}^N e^{|\lambda|t_N} |R_i| \\ &\leq N e^{|\lambda|t_N} Ch^2, \text{ since}^1 |R_i| \leq Ch^2, C = \text{const} > 0 \\ &\leq e^{|\lambda|t_N} Ch t_N, \text{ since } t_N = Nh. \end{aligned} \quad (35)$$

<sup>284</sup> Finally, we have

$$|e_N| \leq Bh, \quad B := e^{|\lambda|t_N} Ct_N. \quad (36)$$

<sup>285</sup> Thus, we have proved that the Euler method converges to the exact solution with order  $p = 1$ . ■

<sup>286</sup> Having proved the convergence of the Euler method for the linear IVP, let us try to do the same  
<sup>287</sup> for the general nonlinear case.

### <sup>288</sup> Theorem 1.2 (Convergence of the Euler method for the general IVP)

<sup>289</sup> *The Euler method for the IVP*

$$x' = f(t, x), \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [0, t_N], \quad (37)$$

<sup>290</sup> with a Lipschitz continuous function  $f(t, x)$  and  $f \in C^1$  converges, and the global error satisfies:

$$|e_N| \leq Bh, \quad B = \text{const} > 0. \quad (38)$$

<sup>291</sup>

<sup>292</sup> **Proof.** The Euler method for IVP (37) is given by

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_n, \quad x_0 = \alpha, \quad t_i := ih, \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N. \quad (39)$$

<sup>293</sup> The proof follows the same steps as that of Theorem 1.1. Namely, we Taylor expand the exact  
<sup>294</sup> solution of (37) up to the second order

$$\begin{aligned} x(t_{n+1}) &= x(t_n) + h x'(t_n) + R \\ &= x(t_n) + h f(t_n, x(t_n)) + R, \end{aligned} \quad (40)$$

<sup>295</sup> where  $R = \mathcal{O}(h^2)$ . The global error is given by the difference between the exact solution,  $x(t_{n+1})$ ,  
<sup>296</sup> and the numerical solution  $x_{n+1}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} e_{n+1} &= x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} \\ &= x(t_n) - x_n + h(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) + R \\ &= e_n + h(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) + R. \end{aligned} \quad (41)$$

As in Theorem 1.1, equation (41) shows us how the global error at time  $t_{n+1}$  depends on the propagated error

$$e_n + h(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n)$$

<sup>297</sup> and the local truncation error given by the remainder  $R$ . The only difference with the analogous  
<sup>298</sup> equation in Theorem 1.1 is the term  $h(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n)$ . To proceed with this equation in the

299 same manner as we did in Theorem 1.1, we take the absolute value of (41), and estimate  $|e_{n+1}|$ .

$$|e_{n+1}| = |e_n + h(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) + R| \\ \leq |e_n| + h|f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n| + |R|$$

using the Lipschitz continuity of  $f$  we have  $|f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n| \leq L|x(t_n) - x_n|$ ,  $L = \text{const} \geq 0$   
 $\leq (1 + \hat{h})|e_n| + |R|$ ,  $\hat{h} := hL$ .

(42)

300 For  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N - 1$  we find

$$|e_0| = x(t_0) - x_0 = 0, \\ |e_1| \leq |R_1|, \\ |e_2| \leq (1 + \hat{h})|e_1| + |R_2| = (1 + \hat{h})|R_1| + |R_2|, \\ |e_3| \leq (1 + \hat{h})|e_2| + |R_3| = (1 + \hat{h})^2|R_1| + (1 + \hat{h})|R_2| + |R_3|, \\ \dots \\ |e_N| \leq \sum_{i=1}^N (1 + \hat{h})^{N-i} |R_i|. \quad (43)$$

301 The error in the initial condition is zero, since the initial condition is known exactly.

302 The next step is to estimate  $|e_N|$ . Acting in the same way as in Theorem 1.1, we find that

$$|e_N| \leq \sum_{i=1}^N e^{Lt_N} |R_i| \\ \leq Ne^{Lt_N} Ch^2, \text{ since } |R_i| \leq Ch^2, \quad C = \text{const} > 0 \\ \leq e^{Lt_N} Cht_N, \text{ since } t_N = Nh. \quad (44)$$

303 Finally, we have

$$|e_N| \leq Bh, \quad B := e^{Lt_N} Ct_N. \quad (45)$$

304 Thus, we have proved that the Euler method converges to the exact solution with order  $p = 1$ . ■

305 **Remark 1.1** The error estimation in Theorem 1.2 is of no use in practice, due to the presence of  
306 the exponential term. However, the importance of this proof is that it shows that the error decays  
307 globally as  $\mathcal{O}(h)$ , i.e. the Euler method converges to the exact solution with order  $p = 1$ .

### 308 The Euler method via Taylor series

309 Let me draw your attention to another way of deriving the Euler method. I believe you have already  
310 noticed the similarity between Euler's method and the first two terms in the Taylor expansion. And  
311 this is how one can derive the Euler method using the Taylor series. Just truncate the  $\mathcal{O}(h^2)$  terms  
312 in Taylor series of  $x(t_{n+1})$  to get the Euler method:

$$x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + hx'(t_n) + \mathcal{O}(h^2) \Rightarrow x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + hx'(t_n). \quad (46)$$

313 Using the differential equation  $x' = f(t, x)$  in (46) leads to

$$x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + hf(t_n, x(t_n)), \quad (47)$$

<sup>314</sup> and finally we have the Euler method:

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_n. \quad (48)$$

<sup>315</sup> The idea of truncating the Taylor series brings us to a new class of numerical methods called Taylor Series Methods which will be studied in the next lecture.

## 317 Lecture 2 Taylor series methods

318 As we have seen, the Euler method accuracy is controlled by the time step – the smaller the time  
 319 step is, the higher the accuracy becomes. However, following this route is not always practical, since  
 320 it can take a lot of time steps to get high accuracy. As an alternative, one can use more accurate  
 321 methods at each time step to get higher accuracy with the same time step or the same accuracy  
 322 with a larger time step. There are a plethora of methods to achieve this goal. Now, we investigate  
 323 the possibility of improving the accuracy by retaining more term in the Taylor series. The methods  
 324 based on this idea form the class of Taylor series (TS) methods.

325 TS methods are methods of general applicability which can be derived to have a given degree of  
 326 accuracy, and therefore it is the standard to which we compare the accuracy of numerical methods  
 327 studied in this course. We start from

328 **Theorem 2.1 (Taylor’s theorem)** Assume that  $x(t) \in C_{[t_0, t_N]}^{n+1}$  then  $x(t)$  has the following expansion  
 329 of order  $n$  about the fixed value  $t = t_k \in [t_0, t_N]$ :

$$x(t_k+h) = x(t_k) + h x'(t_k, x(t_k)) + \frac{h^2}{2!} x''(t_k, x(t_k)) + \frac{h^3}{3!} x'''(t_k, x(t_k)) + \dots + \frac{h^n}{n!} x^{(n)}(t_k, x(t_k)) + \mathcal{O}(h^{n+1}), \quad (49)$$

330 where  $x^{(n)}$  is the  $n$ -th derivative with respect to  $t$ .

331

332 Using the ODE  $x' = f(t, x)$  we replace the derivative of  $x$  in the Taylor series (49):

$$x(t_k+h) = x(t_k) + h f(t_k, x(t_k)) + \frac{h^2}{2!} f'(t_k, x(t_k)) + \frac{h^3}{3!} f''(t_k, x(t_k)) + \dots + \frac{h^n}{n!} f^{(n-1)}(t_k, x(t_k)) + \mathcal{O}(h^{n+1}). \quad (50)$$

333 A Taylor series method of order  $n$  (TS( $n$ ) method for short) is derived by retaining the terms up to  
 334 order  $n$  in the expansion. In particular,

TS(1) method (Euler’s method):  $x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_n.$

TS(2) method:  $x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_n + \frac{h^2}{2!} f'_n.$

TS(3) method:  $x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_n + \frac{h^2}{2!} f'_n + \frac{h^3}{3!} f''_n. \quad (51)$

...

TS( $n$ ) method:  $x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_n + \frac{h^2}{2!} f'_n + \frac{h^3}{3!} f''_n + \dots + \frac{h^n}{n!} f_n^{(n-1)}.$

335 Note that the TS( $n$ ) method has the local truncation error and global error of order  $\mathcal{O}(h^{n+1})$  and  
 336  $\mathcal{O}(h^n)$  (to be proven below), respectively. Hence,  $n$  can be chosen as large as necessary to make  
 337 the error as small as desired.

338 Let us consider some example on how to apply TS methods to scalar equations and systems of  
 339 equations.

340 **Example 2.1 (TS(2) for a scalar ODE)** Let’s consider the initial value problem for the scalar  
 341 equation

$$x' = (1 - 2t)x, \quad x(0) = 1, \quad t \in [0, 1]. \quad (52)$$

342 Taking into account that  $x'' = (1 - 2t)x' - 2x$ , the TS(2) method for (52) is given by

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_n + \frac{h^2}{2!} f'_n, \quad f_n := (1 - 2t_n)x_n, \quad f'_n := (1 - 2t_n)f_n - 2x_n. \quad (53)$$

343



344 **Example 2.2 (TS(3) for a scalar ODE)** Let's consider the initial value problem for the scalar  
345 equation

$$x' = (1 - 2t)x, \quad x(0) = 1, \quad t \in [0, 1]. \quad (54)$$

346 Taking into account that  $x'' = (1 - 2t)x' - 2x$  and  $x''' = (1 - 2t)x'' - 4x'$ , the TS(3) method  
347 for (54) is

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_n + \frac{h^2}{2!} f'_n + \frac{h^3}{3!} f''_n, \quad f_n := (1 - 2t_n)x_n, \quad f'_n := (1 - 2t_n)f_n - 2x_n, \quad f''_n := (1 - 2t_n)f'_n - 4f_n. \quad (55)$$

348



349 **Example 2.3 (TS(2) for a system of ODEs)** Let's consider the initial value problem for the sys-  
350 tem of ODEs

$$\begin{cases} u' = v, \\ v' = t^2 - u. \end{cases} \quad (56)$$

351 with the initial conditions:

$$u(t_0) = 2, \quad v(t_0) = 3. \quad (57)$$

352 Then, the TS(2) method for IVP (56)-(57) reads

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+1} = \mathbf{x}_n + h \mathbf{f}_n + \frac{h^2}{2!} \mathbf{f}'_n, \quad \mathbf{x}_n = \begin{pmatrix} u_n \\ v_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{f}_n = \begin{pmatrix} v_n \\ t_n^2 - u_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{f}'_n = \begin{pmatrix} v'_n \\ 2t_n - u'_n \end{pmatrix}. \quad (58)$$

353



354 **Example 2.4 (TS(3) for a system of ODEs)** Let's consider the initial value problem for the sys-  
355 tem of ODEs

$$\begin{cases} u' = v, \\ v' = t^2 - u. \end{cases} \quad (59)$$

356 with the initial conditions:

$$u(t_0) = 2, \quad v(t_0) = 3. \quad (60)$$

357 Then, the TS(3) method for IVP (59)-(60) reads

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+1} = \mathbf{x}_n + h \mathbf{f}_n + \frac{h^2}{2!} \mathbf{f}'_n + \frac{h^3}{3!} \mathbf{f}''_n, \quad \mathbf{x}_n = \begin{pmatrix} u_n \\ v_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{f}_n = \begin{pmatrix} v_n \\ t_n^2 - u_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{f}'_n = \begin{pmatrix} v'_n \\ 2t_n - u'_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{f}''_n = \begin{pmatrix} v''_n \\ 2 - u''_n \end{pmatrix} \quad (61)$$

358 where  $v''_n = 2t_n - v_n$ ,  $u''_n = t_n^2 - u_n$ .



359 In order to prove the convergence of a TS method, we will take the same steps as we did for the  
360 Euler method. For example, let us prove the convergence of the TS(2) method.

361 **Theorem 2.2 (Convergence of the TS(2) method for the general IVP)** *The TS(2) method  
362 for the IVP*

$$x' = f(t, x), \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [0, t_N], \quad (62)$$

363 with a Lipschitz continuous functions  $f(t, x)$  and  $f'(t, x)$ , and  $f \in C^2$  converges, and the global  
364 error satisfies:

$$|e_N| \leq Bh^2, \quad B = \text{const} > 0. \quad (63)$$

365

<sup>366</sup> **Proof.** The TS(2) method for IVP (62) is given by

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_n + \frac{h^2}{2} f'_n, \quad x_0 = \alpha, \quad t_i := ih, \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N. \quad (64)$$

<sup>367</sup> Taylor expand the exact solution of (62) up to the third order

$$\begin{aligned} x(t_{n+1}) &= x(t_n) + h x'(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2} x'''(t_n) + R \\ &= x(t_n) + h f(t_n, x(t_n)) + \frac{h^2}{2} f''(t_n) + R, \end{aligned} \quad (65)$$

<sup>368</sup> where  $R = \mathcal{O}(h^3)$ . The global error is given:

$$\begin{aligned} e_{n+1} &= x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} \\ &= x(t_n) - x_n + h(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}(f'(t_n, x(t_n)) - f'_n) + R \\ &= e_n + h(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}(f'(t_n, x(t_n)) - f'_n) + R. \end{aligned} \quad (66)$$

As in Theorem 1.2, equation (66) shows us how the global error at time  $t_{n+1}$  depends on the propagated error

$$e_n + h(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}(f'(t_n, x(t_n)) - f'_n)$$

<sup>369</sup> and the local truncation error given by the reminder  $R$ . The only difference with the analogous  
<sup>370</sup> equation in Theorem 1.2 is the term  $\frac{h^2}{2}(f'(t_n, x(t_n)) - f'_n)$ . To proceed with this equation in the  
<sup>371</sup> same manner as we did in Theorem 1.2, we take the absolute value of (66), and estimate  $|e_{n+1}|$ .

$$\begin{aligned} |e_{n+1}| &= |e_n + h(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) + R| \\ &\leq |e_n| + h|f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n| + \frac{h^2}{2}|f'(t_n, x(t_n)) - f'_n| + |R| \\ &\text{using the Lipschitz continuity of } f \text{ we have } |f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n| \leq L|x(t_n) - x_n|, \quad L = \text{const} \geq 0, \\ &\text{and the Lipschitz continuity of } f' \text{ we have } |f'(t_n, x(t_n)) - f'_n| \leq L^2|x(t_n) - x_n|, \\ &\leq (1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2})|e_n| + |R|, \quad \hat{h} := hL. \end{aligned} \quad (67)$$

<sup>372</sup> For  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1$  we find that

$$\begin{aligned} |e_0| &= x(t_0) - x_0 = 0, \\ |e_1| &\leq |R_1|, \\ |e_2| &\leq (1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2})|e_1| + |R_2| = (1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2})|R_1| + |R_2|, \\ |e_3| &\leq (1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2})|e_2| + |R_3| = (1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2})^2|R_1| + (1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2})|R_2| + |R_3|, \\ &\dots \\ |e_N| &\leq \sum_{i=1}^N (1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2})^{N-i} |R_i|. \end{aligned} \quad (68)$$

<sup>373</sup> The error in the initial condition is zero, since the initial condition is known exactly.

<sup>374</sup> In order to estimate  $|e_N|$ , we use the following inequality

$$|1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2}| \leq e^{|\hat{h}|}. \quad (69)$$

<sup>375</sup> Exponentiating (69) to the power of  $(N - i)$  gives

$$|1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2}|^{N-i} \leq e^{|\hat{h}|(N-i)}. \quad (70)$$

<sup>376</sup> Acting in the same manner as in Theorem 1.2, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} |e_N| &\leq \sum_{i=1}^N e^{Lt_N} |R_i| \\ &\leq N e^{Lt_N} C h^3, \text{ since}^1 |R_i| \leq C h^3, \quad C = \text{const} > 0 \\ &\leq e^{Lt_N} C h^2 t_N, \text{ since } t_N = N h. \end{aligned} \quad (71)$$

<sup>377</sup> Finally, we have

$$|e_N| \leq B h^2, \quad B := e^{Lt_N} C t_N. \quad (72)$$

<sup>378</sup> Thus, we have proved that the TS(2) method converges to the exact solution with order  $p = 2$ . ■

<sup>379</sup> Using the same approach, one can prove the convergence of a TS( $n$ ) method for any given  
<sup>380</sup>  $n$ . From what we have seen so far, we can easily come to the conclusion that TS methods can  
<sup>381</sup> dramatically increase the accuracy of the solution and, more importantly, can do it in a systematic  
<sup>382</sup> way. Indeed, this is the case! However, these methods are not widely used in practice, because  
<sup>383</sup> computing higher-order derivatives of the right hand side can result in very complicated expressions  
<sup>384</sup> (especially for systems of ODEs) that are very difficult to manage. In the following lectures, we will  
<sup>385</sup> study methods which allow to compute the numerical solution with high-accuracy while avoiding  
<sup>386</sup> computing higher-order derivatives.

387 **Lecture 3 Linear multistep methods**

388 We will consider the family of linear multistep methods (LMMs), which give the same or higher  
389 accuracy as TS methods but at lower computational complexity (the number of elementary opera-  
390 tions required to solve a given problem) by using available values of  $x(t)$  and  $x'(t)$  computed at the  
391 previous  $s$  time steps.

392 For simplicity, let us recall the derivation of the TS(2) method for the IVP

$$x' = f(t, x), \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (73)$$

393 We start from the Taylor expansion of  $x(t)$  up to order 2:

$$x(t+h) = x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3). \quad (74)$$

394 If we truncate  $\mathcal{O}(h^3)$ -terms and substitute  $x'(t)$  and  $x''(t)$  with  $f(t, x)$  and  $f'(t, x)$ , respectively,  
395 we will get the TS(2) method. As you can see, this substitution requires the differentiation of the  
396 right hand side. This is the very moment when LMMs come into play. The idea behind LMMs is to  
397 avoid exact calculations of higher-order derivatives (more than one) and to use approximations to  
398 higher-order derivatives instead.

399 **3.1 The general form of linear multistep methods**

400 The general form of a linear  $s$ -step method is given by

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m x_{n+m} = h \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (75)$$

401 where  $\alpha_m, \beta_m = \text{const} \in \mathbb{R}$ , and we take  $\alpha_s = 1$  as a normalizing condition.

402 **Definition 3.1 (Explicit/Implicit LMM)** An LMM is said to be explicit if  $\beta_s = 0$  and implicit if  
403  $\beta_s \neq 0$ .

404 We are not going to discuss how to derive this general form, since it will become clear when we will  
405 have gain more experience with LMM. I would like to draw your attention to the fact that LMMs  
406 with  $s > 1$  are not self-starting, since they require  $s - 1$  starting values.

407 **How would you compute the starting values for these LMMs?**

408 **3.2 Convergence of linear multistep methods**

409 The definition of convergence (1.3) should be adapted to be used with LMMs to accommodate the  
410 starting values of the LMM. Let us consider the IVP

$$x' = f(t, x), \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (76)$$

411 Then convergence for LMMs can be defined as follows.

412 **Definition 3.2 (Convergence for LMMs)** An LMM with starting values  $\{x_m\}_{m \in [0, s-1]}$  satisfy-  
413 ing  $|x(t_0 + mh) - x_m| \rightarrow 0$  for  $m \in [0, s - 1]$  is said to converge to the exact solution  $x(t)$  of  
414 IVP (76) at time  $t = t_n$  if the global error

$$|e_n| = |x(t_n) - x_n| \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0. \quad (77)$$

<sup>415</sup> Now, let us switch to more practical questions and consider LMMs based on different approxi-  
<sup>416</sup> mations of  $x''(t)$ . Our first method is the Trapezoidal rule.

### <sup>417</sup> 3.3 The Trapezoidal rule

<sup>418</sup> In order to approximate  $x''(t)$  we differentiate the Taylor expansion (74)

$$x'(t+h) = x'(t) + hx''(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3), \quad (78)$$

<sup>419</sup> and isolate  $hx''(t)$

$$hx''(t) = x'(t+h) - x'(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^2). \quad (79)$$

<sup>420</sup> Note that the sign of  $\mathcal{O}(h^2)$ -term is insignificant. Also note that the ratio

$$x''(t) \approx \frac{x'(t+h) - x'(t)}{h}. \quad (80)$$

<sup>421</sup> is called the forward difference, and approximate the function  $x''$  with the first order of accuracy.  
<sup>422</sup> Substituting  $hx''(t)$  into (74) gives

$$\begin{aligned} x(t+h) &= x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h}{2}(x'(t+h) - x'(t)) + \mathcal{O}(h^3) \\ &= x(t) + \frac{h}{2}(x'(t+h) + x'(t)) + \mathcal{O}(h^3). \end{aligned} \quad (81)$$

<sup>423</sup> Now, we can use the differential equation (73) to replace  $x'(t)$  with  $f(t, x)$ :

$$x(t+h) = x(t) + \frac{h}{2}(f(t+h, x(t+h)) + f(t, x(t))) + \mathcal{O}(h^3). \quad (82)$$

<sup>424</sup> Evaluating (82) at  $t = t_n$  and truncating  $\mathcal{O}(h^3)$ -terms yields

$$\text{The Trapezoidal rule: } x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{2}(f_{n+1} + f_n), \quad (83)$$

<sup>425</sup> where  $f_n := f(t_n, x_n)$ .

<sup>426</sup> Unlike the TS methods, we do not have an explicit expression for  $x_{n+1}$  in terms of data from the  
<sup>427</sup> previous time step, therefore the Trapezoidal rule is an implicit method.

<sup>428</sup> **Example 3.1 (The Trapezoidal rule for a scalar ODE)** Let's consider the initial value problem  
<sup>429</sup> for the scalar equation

$$x' = (1 - 2t)x, \quad x(0) = 1, \quad t \in [0, 1]. \quad (84)$$

<sup>430</sup> The Trapezoidal rule for (84) is

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{2}((1 - 2t_{n+1})x_{n+1} + (1 - 2t_n)x_n). \quad (85)$$

<sup>431</sup>



<sup>432</sup> **Example 3.2 (The Trapezoidal rule for a system of ODEs)** Let's consider the initial value prob-  
<sup>433</sup> lem for the system of ODEs

$$\begin{cases} u' = v, \\ v' = t^2 - u. \end{cases} \quad (86)$$

<sup>434</sup> with the initial conditions:

$$u(t_0) = 2, \quad v(t_0) = 3. \quad (87)$$

<sup>435</sup> Then, the Trapezoidal rule for IVP (86)-(87) reads

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+1} = \mathbf{x}_n + \frac{h}{2}(\mathbf{f}_{n+1} + \mathbf{f}_n), \quad \mathbf{x}_n = \begin{pmatrix} u_n \\ v_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{f}_{n+1} = \begin{pmatrix} v_{n+1} \\ t_{n+1}^2 - u_{n+1} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{f}_n = \begin{pmatrix} v_n \\ t_n^2 - u_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad (88)$$

<sup>436</sup>



### <sup>437</sup> 3.4 The local truncation error of the Trapezoidal rule

<sup>438</sup> To calculate the local truncation error of the Trapezoidal rule, we act as before with the only  
<sup>439</sup> exception. Namely, we roll back to the equation

$$x(t+h) = x(t) + \frac{h}{2}(x'(t+h) + x'(t)) \quad (89)$$

<sup>440</sup> and Taylor expand  $x'(t+h)$ . Here, the idea is to get rid off the implicit dependence on the right  
<sup>441</sup> hand side. For this, we Taylor expand  $x(t+h)$  and then differentiate the Taylor series with respect  
<sup>442</sup> to  $t$  as in (78):

$$x'(t+h) = x'(t) + hx''(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3). \quad (90)$$

<sup>443</sup> It is repetitive, but it is better to get this expression right at hand. Substitution of (90) into (89)  
<sup>444</sup> results in

$$\begin{aligned} x(t+h) &= x(t) + \frac{h}{2}(x'(t) + hx''(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x'''(t) + x'(t)) + \mathcal{O}(h^4) \\ &= x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t) + \frac{h^3}{4}x'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4), \end{aligned} \quad (91)$$

<sup>445</sup> or

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + hx'_n + \frac{h^2}{2}x''_n + \frac{h^3}{4}x'''_n + \mathcal{O}(h^4). \quad (92)$$

<sup>446</sup> The Taylor expansion of  $x(t)$  is given by

$$x(t+h) = x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t) + \frac{h^3}{6}x'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4). \quad (93)$$

<sup>447</sup> To compute the local truncation error of the Trapezoidal rule, we just subtract  $x_{n+1}$  from  $x(t+h)$ :

<sup>448</sup>

$$x(t+h) - x_{n+1} = \mathcal{O}(h^3). \quad (94)$$

### <sup>449</sup> 3.5 The global error of the Trapezoidal rule

<sup>450</sup> **Theorem 3.1 (Convergence of the Trapezoidal rule for the general IVP)** *The Trapezoidal rule  
<sup>451</sup> for the IVP*

$$x' = f(t, x), \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [0, t_N], \quad (95)$$

<sup>452</sup> with a Lipschitz continuous functions  $f(t, x)$ , and  $f \in C^2$  converges, and the global error satisfies:

$$|e_N| \leq Bh^2, \quad B = \text{const} > 0. \quad (96)$$

<sup>453</sup>

<sup>454</sup> **Proof.** The Trapezoidal rule for IVP (95) is given by

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{2}(f_{n+1} + f_n), \quad x_0 = \alpha, \quad t_i := ih, \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N. \quad (97)$$

<sup>455</sup> Taylor expand the exact solution of (95) up to the third order using the approximation of the second  
<sup>456</sup> order derivative (as we did for the derivation of the Trapezoidal rule):

$$x(t+h) = x(t) + \frac{h}{2}(f(t+h, x(t+h)) + f(t, x(t))) + R. \quad (98)$$

<sup>457</sup> where  $R = \mathcal{O}(h^3)$ . The global error is given:

$$\begin{aligned} e_{n+1} &= x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} \\ &= x(t_n) - x_n + \frac{h}{2}(f(t_{n+1}, x(t_{n+1})) - f_{n+1}) + \frac{h}{2}(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) + R \\ &= e_n + \frac{h}{2}(f(t_{n+1}, x(t_{n+1})) - f_{n+1}) + \frac{h}{2}(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) + R. \end{aligned} \quad (99)$$

As in Theorem 2.2, equation (99) shows us how the global error at time  $t_{n+1}$  depends on the propagated error

$$e_n + \frac{h}{2}(f(t_{n+1}, x(t_{n+1})) - f_{n+1}) + \frac{h}{2}(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n)$$

<sup>458</sup> and the local truncation error given by the reminder  $R$ . To proceed, we take the absolute value  
<sup>459</sup> of (99), and estimate  $|e_{n+1}|$ .

$$\begin{aligned} |e_{n+1}| &= |e_n + \frac{h}{2}(f(t_{n+1}, x(t_{n+1})) - f_{n+1}) + \frac{h}{2}(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) + R| \\ &\leq |e_n| + \frac{h}{2}|f(t_{n+1}, x(t_{n+1})) - f_{n+1}| + \frac{h}{2}|f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n| + |R| \end{aligned}$$

using the Lipschitz continuity of  $f$  we have  $|f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n| \leq L|x(t_n) - x_n|$ ,  $L = \text{const} \geq 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} &\leq |e_n| + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}|x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1}| + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}|x(t_n) - x_n| + |R|, \quad \hat{h} := hL, \\ &\leq (1 + \frac{\hat{h}}{2})|e_n| + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}|e_{n+1}| + |R| \\ &\leq \frac{1 + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}}{1 - \frac{\hat{h}}{2}}|e_n| + \frac{|R|}{1 - \frac{\hat{h}}{2}} \\ &= A|e_n| + |R|S^{-1}, \quad A := (1 + \frac{\hat{h}}{2})S^{-1}, \quad S := 1 - \frac{\hat{h}}{2}. \end{aligned} \quad (100)$$

<sup>460</sup> For  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N - 1$  we find that

$$\begin{aligned} |e_0| &= x(t_0) - x_0 = 0, \\ |e_1| &\leq |R_1|S^{-1}, \\ |e_2| &\leq A|e_1| + |R_2|S^{-1} = (A|R_1| + |R_2|)S^{-1}, \\ |e_3| &\leq A|e_2| + |R_3|S^{-1} = (A^2|R_1| + A|R_2| + |R_3|)S^{-1}, \\ &\dots \\ |e_N| &\leq \sum_{i=1}^N A^{N-i}|R_i|S^{-1}. \end{aligned} \tag{101}$$

<sup>461</sup> The error in the initial condition is zero, since the initial condition is known exactly.

<sup>462</sup> Since<sup>1</sup>  $|R_i| \leq Ch^3$ ,  $C = \text{const} > 0$ , we can estimate (101) as

$$\begin{aligned} |e_N| &\leq \sum_{i=1}^N A^{N-i}|R_i|S^{-1} \\ &\leq \sum_{i=1}^N A^{N-i}Ch^3S^{-1}. \end{aligned} \tag{102}$$

<sup>463</sup> Using the geometric series

$$1 + A + A^2 + \dots + A^{N-1} = \frac{A^N - 1}{A - 1} \tag{103}$$

<sup>464</sup> in (102) we find

$$\begin{aligned} |e_N| &\leq \frac{A^N - 1}{A - 1} Ch^3 S^{-1} \\ &= \frac{A^N - 1}{L} Ch^2. \end{aligned} \tag{104}$$

<sup>465</sup> Then we rewrite  $A$  as

$$A := (1 + \hat{h})S^{-1} = 1 + \hat{h}S^{-1}, \tag{105}$$

<sup>466</sup> and use the following inequality

$$1 + \hat{h}S^{-1} \leq e^{\hat{h}S^{-1}}. \tag{106}$$

<sup>467</sup> Exponentiating (106) to the power of  $N$  gives

$$(1 + \hat{h}S^{-1})^N \leq e^{N\hat{h}S^{-1}}. \tag{107}$$

<sup>468</sup> Using (107) in (104) leads to

$$\begin{aligned} |e_N| &\leq \frac{e^{N\hat{h}S^{-1}} - 1}{L} Ch^2 \\ &\leq B h^2, \end{aligned} \tag{108}$$

<sup>469</sup> where  $B := C(e^{Lt_N S^{-1}} - 1)/L$ .

<sup>470</sup> Thus, we have proved that the Trapezoidal rule converges to the exact solution with order  $p = 2$ .

<sup>471</sup> ■

### 472 3.6 How to develop the most accurate one-step method

473 Before reading further, give yourself a minute to think about how would you approach the task of  
474 developing the most accurate one-step method.

475 The general roadmap of the development can look as follows.

#### 476 1. Fix the general form of the one-step method.

477 For this, just use  $s = 1$  in (75). It gives

$$\alpha_0 x_n + \alpha_1 x_{n+1} = h(\beta_1 f_{n+1} + \beta_0 f_n). \quad (109)$$

478 By definition,  $\alpha_1 = 1$ , and therefore we have

$$x_{n+1} = \alpha_0 x_n + h(\beta_1 f_{n+1} + \beta_0 f_n). \quad (110)$$

479 The sign in front of  $\alpha_0$  is immaterial, since  $\alpha_0$  has to be defined from the conditions described  
480 below.

481 We have the method! The only snag is that it has three unknown coefficients  $\alpha_0$ ,  $\beta_0$ , and  $\beta_1$ .  
482 How to find them? Well, since we want the most accurate method then we have to choose  
483 these coefficients so that they minimize the local truncation. For doing so, we first eliminate  
484 the implicit dependence on the solution in the right hand side of (110) and then find the local  
485 truncation error in the usual way. Let us write (110) in the continuous form, namely

$$x(t_n + h) = \alpha_0 x(t_n) + h(\beta_1 f(t_n + h, x(t_n + h)) + \beta_0 f(t_n, x(t_n))), \quad (111)$$

486 Using the ODE  $x' = f(t, x)$  in (111) gives

$$x(t_n + h) = \alpha_0 x(t_n) + h(\beta_1 x'(t_n + h) + \beta_0 x'(t_n)). \quad (112)$$

487 Now, we Taylor expand  $x'(t_n + h)$

$$x'(t_n + h) = x'(t_n) + h x''(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2} x'''(t_n) + \mathcal{O}(h^3). \quad (113)$$

488 and plug it back into (112):

$$x(t_n + h) = \alpha_0 x(t_n) + h(\beta_1(x'(t_n) + h x''(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2} x'''(t_n)) + \beta_0 x'(t_n)) + \mathcal{O}(h^4). \quad (114)$$

#### 489 2. Find the minimum local truncation error between the exact solution and its approx- 490 imation.

491 The Taylor expansion of the exact solution is given by

$$x(t + h) = x(t) + h x'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2} x''(t) + \frac{h^3}{6} x'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4). \quad (115)$$

492 Since  $x(t) \equiv x(t_n)$ , the difference is

$$x(t+h) - x(t_n+h) = (1-\alpha_0)x(t) + h(1-\beta_1-\beta_0)x'(t) + h^2(\frac{1}{2}-\beta_1)x''(t) + h^3(\frac{1}{6}-\frac{\beta_1}{2})x'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4). \quad (116)$$

493 To get the most accurate one-step method, we have to find  $\alpha_0$ ,  $\beta_0$ , and  $\beta_1$  which deliver the  
494 minimum to (116). In this case, it happens to be  $\alpha_0 = 1$ ,  $\beta_0 = \beta_1 = \frac{1}{2}$ . Thus, **the most**

495

**accurate one-step method is**

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{2}(f_{n+1} + f_n). \quad (117)$$

496

*This is the Trapezoidal rule!*

497 If you want to find the most accurate  $s$ -step method you can use the same approach:

498 (1) fix the general form of the method;

499 (2) find unknown coefficients  $\{\alpha_m\}_{m \in [0, s-1]}$ ,  $\alpha_s = 1$  and  $\{\beta_m\}_{m \in [0, s]}$  which minimize the local  
500 truncation.

501 This simple idea gives you a powerful tool for development of your own LMMs with a given order  
502 of accuracy. We will return to this discussion later in the context of linear multi-step methods.

503

504 **Lecture 4 The 2-step Adams-Bashforth method, AB(2)**

505 Now, let us shift our focus on 2-step methods. We start from the 2-step Adams-Bashforth method.  
 506 The derivation of the 2-step Adams-Bashforth method is similar to the derivation of the Trapezoidal.  
 507 First, we Taylor expand

$$x(t+h) = x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3), \quad (118)$$

508 and instead of using the exact value of  $x''(t)$ , we approximate it. For the Trapezoidal rule we isolated  
 509  $hx''(t)$  from

$$x'(t+h) = x'(t) + hx''(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3), \quad (119)$$

510 For the AB(2) method, we find  $hx''(t)$  from

$$x'(t-h) = x'(t) - hx''(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3). \quad (120)$$

511 This gives

$$hx''(t) = x'(t) - x'(t-h) + \mathcal{O}(h^2). \quad (121)$$

512 Note that the ratio

$$x''(t) \approx \frac{x'(t) - x'(t-h)}{h}. \quad (122)$$

513 is called the backward difference, and approximate the function  $x''$  with the first order of accuracy.

514 Substituting  $hx''(t)$  into (118) gives

$$\begin{aligned} x(t+h) &= x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h}{2}(x'(t) - x'(t-h)) + \mathcal{O}(h^3) \\ &= x(t) + \frac{h}{2}(3x'(t) - x'(t-h)) + \mathcal{O}(h^3). \end{aligned} \quad (123)$$

515 Using the differential equation  $x' = f(t, x)$  in (123) to replace  $x'(t)$  with  $f(t, x)$  results in

$$x(t+h) = x(t) + \frac{h}{2}(3f(t, x(t)) - f(t-h, x(t-h))) + \mathcal{O}(h^3). \quad (124)$$

516 Evaluating (124) at  $t = t_n$  and truncating  $\mathcal{O}(h^3)$ -terms yields

$$\text{The 2-step Adams-Bashforth method: } x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{2}(3f_n - f_{n-1}), \quad (125)$$

517 where  $f_n := f(t_n, x_n)$ . Note that (125) is a 2-step method, since it uses the solution at two previous  
 518 time steps ( $x_{n-1}$  and  $x_n$ ) to compute  $x_{n+1}$ . Therefore, in order to start the AB(2) method one  
 519 can use a 1-step method. Let us consider how to use the AB(2) method together with the Euler  
 520 method.

521 **Example 4.1 (The AB(2) method and Euler's method)** Let's consider the initial value prob-  
 522 lem for the system of equations

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}), \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (126)$$

523 The AB(2) method for IVP (126) reads

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+1} = \mathbf{x}_n + \frac{h}{2}(3\mathbf{f}_n - \mathbf{f}_{n-1}). \quad (127)$$

524 In order to use the Euler method together with the AB(2) method we shift the indices in (127) to  
525 the right:

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+2} = \mathbf{x}_{n+1} + \frac{h}{2}(3\mathbf{f}_{n+1} - \mathbf{f}_n). \quad (128)$$

526 Now, we can use the initial condition to compute  $\mathbf{f}_0(t, \mathbf{x}_0)$  and apply the Euler method only once  
527 at time  $t_0$  to find  $\mathbf{x}_1$  and then use it to compute  $\mathbf{f}_1(t, \mathbf{x}_1)$  on the right hand side of (128). Having  
528 computed  $\mathbf{f}_0$ ,  $\mathbf{f}_1$ , and  $\mathbf{x}_1$ , we then compute  $\mathbf{x}_2$  using the AB(2) method. To compute the next  
529 value,  $\mathbf{x}_3$ , we do not need Euler's method anymore, since previous values  $\mathbf{x}_1$  and  $\mathbf{x}_2$  have already  
530 been computed. ▲

531 **Example 4.2 (The AB(2) method for a scalar ODE)** Let's consider the initial value problem  
532 for the scalar equation

$$x' = (1 - 2t)x, \quad x(0) = 1, \quad t \in [0, 1]. \quad (129)$$

533 The AB(2) method for (129) is

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{2}(3(1 - 2t_n)x_n - (1 - 2t_{n-1})x_{n-1}). \quad (130)$$

534



535 **Example 4.3 (The AB(2) method for a system of ODEs)** Let's consider the initial value prob-  
536 lem for the system of ODEs

$$\begin{cases} u' = v, \\ v' = t^2 - u. \end{cases} \quad (131)$$

537 with the initial conditions:

$$u(t_0) = 2, \quad v(t_0) = 3. \quad (132)$$

538 Then, the AB(2) method for IVP (131)-(132) reads

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+1} = \mathbf{x}_n + \frac{h}{2}(3\mathbf{f}_n - \mathbf{f}_{n-1}), \quad \mathbf{x}_n = \begin{pmatrix} u_n \\ v_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{f}_n = \begin{pmatrix} v_n \\ t_n^2 - u_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{f}_{n-1} = \begin{pmatrix} v_{n-1} \\ t_{n-1}^2 - u_{n-1} \end{pmatrix}, \quad (133)$$

539



540 Using Taylor's series is not the only way of derivation of the 2-step Adams-Basforth method. It  
541 also concerns other methods considered in this course. Let us study an alternative derivation of the  
542 AB(2) method.

#### 543 4.1 Derivation of the AB(2) method via Lagrange polynomials

544 Consider the following IVP

$$x' = f(t, x), \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (134)$$

545 The integration of (143) over the interval  $[t_n, t_{n+1}]$  gives

$$\int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} x' dt = \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} f(t, x) dt \Rightarrow x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} f(t, x) dt. \quad (135)$$

546 To proceed with the numerical solution, we have to compute the integral of  $f(t, x)$ . For this, we  
 547 can approximate  $f(t, x)$  with Lagrange polynomials and then do the integration. Let us take the  
 548 Lagrange polynomial

$$\mathcal{L}(t) := \sum_{j=0}^k f_j \ell_j(t), \quad \ell_j(t) := \prod_{\substack{0 \leq m \leq k \\ m \neq j}} \frac{t - t_m}{t_j - t_m}. \quad (136)$$

549 To derive the AB(2) method, we take the Lagrange polynomial through two points  $t_{n-1}$  and  $t_n$  (in  
 550 this case  $k = 1$ ):

$$\mathcal{L}(t) := \frac{t - t_n}{t_{n-1} - t_n} f_{n-1} + \frac{t - t_{n-1}}{t_n - t_{n-1}} f_n. \quad (137)$$

551 Thus, we can approximate the integral in (135) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} f(t, x) dt &\approx \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} \mathcal{L}(t) dt \\ &= \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} \left( \frac{t - t_n}{t_{n-1} - t_n} f_{n-1} + \frac{t - t_{n-1}}{t_n - t_{n-1}} f_n \right) dt \\ &= \left[ \frac{t(t - 2t_n)}{2(t_{n-1} - t_n)} f_{n-1} + \frac{t(t - 2t_{n-1})}{2(t_n - t_{n-1})} f_n \right]_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} \\ &\text{taking into account that } h = t_n - t_{n-1} \text{ we have} \\ &= \left[ \frac{t(t - 2t_{n-1})}{2h} f_n - \frac{t(t - 2t_n)}{2h} f_{n-1} \right]_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} \\ &= \frac{t_{n+1}(t_{n+1} - 2t_{n-1}) - t_n(t_n - 2t_{n-1})}{2h} f_n - \frac{t_{n+1}(t_{n+1} - 2t_n) - t_n(t_n - 2t_n)}{2h} f_{n-1} \\ &\text{since } t_{n-1} = t_n - h, \quad t_{n+1} = t_n + h \text{ we have} \\ &= \frac{(t_n + h)(3h - t_n) - t_n(2h - t_n)}{2h} f_n - \frac{(t_n + h)(h - t_n) + t_n^2}{2h} f_{n-1} \\ &= \frac{h}{2} (3f_n - f_{n-1}). \end{aligned} \quad (138)$$

552 Using (138) in (135) gives us the 2-step Adams-Bashforth method.

## 553 4.2 The local truncation error of the AB(2) method

554 To compute the local truncation error of the AB(2) method we first rewrite (125) as

$$x(t_n + h) = x(t_n) + \frac{h}{2} (3x'(t_n) - x'(t_n - h)), \quad (139)$$

555 and then plug the Taylor expansion of  $x'$

$$x'(t_n - h) = x'(t_n) - hx''(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}x'''(t_n) + \mathcal{O}(h^3) \quad (140)$$

556 into (139)

$$\begin{aligned} x(t_n + h) &= x(t_n) + \frac{h}{2}(3x'(t_n) - (x'(t_n) - hx''(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}x'''(t_n))) + \mathcal{O}(h^4) \\ &= x(t_n) + hx'(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t_n) - \frac{h^3}{4}x'''(t_n) + \mathcal{O}(h^4). \end{aligned} \quad (141)$$

557 Then, we find the local truncation error, i.e. the difference between the Taylor expansion of the  
558 exact solution (118) and its approximation (141):

$$x(t + h) - x(t_n + h) = \mathcal{O}(h^3). \quad (142)$$

### 559 4.3 The global error of the AB(2) method

560 Essentially, the proof of the next theorem follows the same idea as the proof of all theorems considered  
561 so far.

562 **Theorem 4.1 (Convergence of the AB(2) method for the general IVP)** *The 2-step Adams-*  
563 *Basforth method for the IVP*

$$x' = f(t, x), \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [0, t_N], \quad (143)$$

564 with a Lipschitz continuous functions  $f(t, x)$ , and  $f \in C^2$  converges, and the global error satisfies:

$$\max_{n \in [0, N]} |x(t_n) - x_n| \leq Bh^2, \quad B = \text{const} > 0. \quad (144)$$

565

566 **Proof.** The AB(2) method for IVP (143) is given by

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{2}(3f_n - f_{n-1}), \quad x_0 = \alpha, \quad t_i := ih, \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N. \quad (145)$$

567 We have already seen in the analysis of the local truncation error of the AB(2) method that

$$\begin{aligned} e_{n+1} &= x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} \\ &= x(t_n) - x_n + \frac{3h}{2}(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) - \frac{h}{2}(f(t_{n-1}, x(t_{n-1})) - f_{n-1}) + R \\ &= e_n + \frac{3h}{2}(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) - \frac{h}{2}(f(t_{n-1}, x(t_{n-1})) - f_{n-1}) + R, \end{aligned} \quad (146)$$

where  $R = \mathcal{O}(h^3)$ . As in Theorem 3.1, equation (146) shows us how the global error at time  $t_{n+1}$  depends on the propagated error

$$e_n + \frac{3h}{2}(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) - \frac{h}{2}(f(t_{n-1}, x(t_{n-1})) - f_{n-1})$$

<sup>568</sup> and the local truncation error given by the reminder  $R$ . Taking the absolute value of (146) yields

$$\begin{aligned} |e_{n+1}| &= |e_n + \frac{3h}{2}(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) - \frac{h}{2}(f(t_{n-1}, x(t_{n-1})) - f_{n-1}) + R| \\ &\leq |e_n| + \frac{3h}{2}|f(t_{n+1}, x(t_{n+1})) - f_{n+1}| + \frac{h}{2}|f(t_{n-1}, x(t_{n-1})) - f_{n-1}| + |R| \\ &\quad \text{using the Lipschitz continuity of } f \text{ we have } |f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n| \leq L|x(t_n) - x_n|, L = \text{const} \geq 0, \\ &\leq |e_n| + \frac{3\hat{h}}{2}|x(t_n) - x_n| + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}|x(t_{n-1}) - x_{n-1}| + |R|, \quad \hat{h} := hL, \\ &\leq (1 + \frac{3\hat{h}}{2})|e_n| + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}|e_{n-1}| + |R|. \end{aligned} \tag{147}$$

<sup>569</sup> Introducing the error bounding function  $\delta_n = \max_{\substack{0 \leq i \leq n \\ n \in [0, N]}} |e_i|$  and rewriting (147) in terms of  $\delta_n$  gives

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_{n+1} &\leq (1 + \frac{3\hat{h}}{2})\delta_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}\delta_n + |R| \\ &\leq (1 + 2\hat{h})\delta_n + |R|. \end{aligned} \tag{148}$$

<sup>570</sup> For  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N-1$  we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_0 &= x(t_0) - x_0 = 0, \\ \delta_1 &\leq |R_1|, \\ \delta_2 &\leq (1 + 2\hat{h})\delta_1 + |R_2| = (1 + 2\hat{h})|R_1| + |R_2|, \\ \delta_3 &\leq (1 + 2\hat{h})\delta_2 + |R_3| = (1 + 2\hat{h})^2|R_1| + (1 + 2\hat{h})|R_2| + |R_3|, \\ &\dots \\ \delta_N &\leq \sum_{i=1}^N (1 + 2\hat{h})^{N-i} |R_i|. \end{aligned} \tag{149}$$

<sup>571</sup> In order to estimate  $|\delta_N|$ , we use the following inequality

$$(1 + 2\hat{h}) \leq e^{2\hat{h}}. \tag{150}$$

<sup>572</sup> Exponentiating (150) to the power of  $(N-i)$  gives

$$(1 + 2\hat{h})^{N-i} \leq e^{|2\hat{h}|(N-i)}. \tag{151}$$

<sup>573</sup> Using (151) in (149) leads to

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_N &\leq \sum_{i=1}^N e^{2Lt_N} |R_i| \\ &\leq Ne^{2Lt_N} Ch^3, \text{ since}^1 |R_i| \leq Ch^3, \quad C = \text{const} > 0 \\ &\leq e^{2Lt_N} Ch^2 t_N, \text{ since } t_N = Nh. \end{aligned} \tag{152}$$

<sup>574</sup> Finally, we have

$$\max_{n \in [0, N]} |x(t_n) - x_n| \leq Bh^2, \quad B := e^{2Lt_N} Ct_N. \tag{153}$$

<sup>575</sup> Thus, we have proved that the AB(2) method converges to the exact solution with order  $p = 2$ . ■

<sup>576</sup> **Lecture 5 The 2-step Adams-Moulton method, AM(2)**

<sup>577</sup> As we have already seen, the use of different approximations to the second order derivative leads  
<sup>578</sup> to different methods. For example, the forward difference gives the Trapezoidal rule, while the  
<sup>579</sup> backward difference results in the AB(2) method. If we use the central difference for  $x''(t)$

$$x''(t) \approx \frac{x'(t+h) - x'(t-h)}{2h} \quad (154)$$

<sup>580</sup> and  $x'''(t)$

$$x'''(t) \approx \frac{x'(t+h) - 2x'(t) + x'(t-h)}{h^2} \quad (155)$$

<sup>581</sup> then we will end up with the 2-step Adams-Moulton method. Pay attention that  $x'''(t)$  is approxi-  
<sup>582</sup> mated in terms of  $x'(t)$ , i.e. we do not need the derivatives higher than one in the AM(2) method.  
<sup>583</sup> Also note that the central difference is a second order accurate finite difference scheme.

<sup>584</sup> In order to derive the central difference formula, we find the difference between the derivative of  
<sup>585</sup> the forward Taylor expansion

$$x'(t+h) = x'(t) + hx''(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3), \quad (156)$$

<sup>586</sup> and backward Taylor expansion

$$x'(t-h) = x'(t) - hx''(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3). \quad (157)$$

<sup>587</sup> Namely, we have

$$x''(t) = \frac{x'(t+h) - x'(t-h)}{2h} + \mathcal{O}(h^2). \quad (158)$$

<sup>588</sup> The central difference formula for  $x'''(t)$  can be computed as a sum of the derivative of the  
<sup>589</sup> forward and backward Taylor expansions:

$$x'''(t) = \frac{x'(t+h) - 2x'(t) + x'(t-h)}{h^2} + \mathcal{O}(h^2). \quad (159)$$

<sup>590</sup> We can now take the Taylor expansion

$$x(t+h) = x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t) + \frac{h^3}{6}x'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4), \quad (160)$$

<sup>591</sup> and use the central difference approximation for  $x''(t)$  and  $x'''(t)$ :

$$\begin{aligned} x(t+h) &= x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h}{4}(x'(t+h) - x'(t-h)) + \frac{h}{6}(x'(t+h) - 2x'(t) + x'(t-h)) + \mathcal{O}(h^4) \\ &= x(t) + \frac{h}{12}(8x'(t) + 5x'(t+h) - x'(t-h)) + \mathcal{O}(h^4). \end{aligned} \quad (161)$$

<sup>592</sup> Using the ODE  $x' = f(t, x)$  in (161) we arrive at

The 2-step Adams-Moulton method:  $x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{12}(8f_n + 5f_{n+1} - f_{n-1})$ ,

(162)

<sup>593</sup> where  $f_n := f(t_n, x_n)$ . The AM(2) method is a 2-step implicit method.

## 5.1 Derivation of the AM(2) method via Lagrange polynomials

As with the AB(2) method, the AM(2) method can also be derived via Lagrange polynomials.  
Consider the following IVP

$$x' = f(t, x), \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (163)$$

The integration of (180) over the interval  $[t_n, t_{n+1}]$  gives

$$\int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} x' dt = \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} f(t, x) dt \Rightarrow x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} f(t, x) dt. \quad (164)$$

We approximate  $f(t, x)$  with Lagrange polynomials and then do the integration. Let us take the Lagrange polynomial

$$\mathcal{L}(t) := \sum_{j=0}^k f_j \ell_j(t), \quad \ell_j(t) := \prod_{\substack{0 \leq m \leq k \\ m \neq j}} \frac{t - t_m}{t_j - t_m}. \quad (165)$$

To derive the AM(2) method, we take the Lagrange polynomial through three points  $t_{n-1}$ ,  $t_n$ , and  $t_{n+1}$  (in this case  $k = 2$ ):

$$\mathcal{L}(t) := \frac{t - t_n}{t_{n-1} - t_n} \frac{t - t_{n+1}}{t_{n-1} - t_{n+1}} f_{n-1} + \frac{t - t_{n+1}}{t_n - t_{n+1}} \frac{t - t_{n-1}}{t_n - t_{n-1}} f_n + \frac{t - t_{n-1}}{t_{n+1} - t_{n-1}} \frac{t - t_n}{t_{n+1} - t_n} f_{n+1}. \quad (166)$$

Thus, we can approximate the integral in (164) as follows:

$$\int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} f(t, x) dt \approx \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} \mathcal{L}(t) dt = \text{after some calculations} = \frac{h}{12} (8f_n + 5f_{n+1} - f_{n-1}). \quad (167)$$

Using (167) in (164) gives us the 2-step Adams-Moulton method.

**Be sure you know how to do the calculations in (167).**

605

Analogously to the AB(2) method, the AM(2) method requires a 1-step method to start the integration. Let us consider several examples showing how to apply the AM(2) method.

**Example 5.1 (The AM(2) method and Euler's method)** Let's consider the initial value problem for the system of equations

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{f}(t, \mathbf{x}), \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (168)$$

The AM(2) method for IVP (168) reads

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+1} = \mathbf{x}_n + \frac{h}{12} (8\mathbf{f}_n + 5\mathbf{f}_{n+1} - \mathbf{f}_{n-1}). \quad (169)$$

In order to use the Euler method together with the AM(2) method we shift the indices in (169) to the right as we did it for the AB(2) method:

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+2} = \mathbf{x}_{n+1} + \frac{h}{12} (8\mathbf{f}_{n+1} + 5\mathbf{f}_{n+2} - \mathbf{f}_n). \quad (170)$$

Now, we can use the initial condition to compute  $\mathbf{f}_0(t, \mathbf{x}_0)$  and apply the Euler method only once at time  $t_0$  to find  $\mathbf{x}_1$  and then use it to compute  $\mathbf{f}_1(t, \mathbf{x}_1)$  on the right hand side of (128). Having

615 computed  $\mathbf{f}_0$ ,  $\mathbf{f}_1$ , and  $x_1$ , we then compute  $x_2$  using the AM(2) method. Pay attention that the  
 616 computation of  $x_2$  (as well as  $x_3$ ,  $x_4$ , etc.) in general case requires to find the solution of a nonlinear  
 617 system of equations, since the method is implicit. To compute the next value,  $x_3$ , we do not need  
 618 Euler's method anymore, since previous values  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  have already been computed. ▲

619 **Example 5.2 (The AM(2) method for a scalar ODE)** Let's consider the initial value problem  
 620 for the scalar equation

$$x' = (1 - 2t)x, \quad x(0) = 1, \quad t \in [0, 1]. \quad (171)$$

621 The AM(2) method for (171) is

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{12}(8(1 - 2t_n)x_n + 5(1 - 2t_{n+1})x_{n+1} - (1 - 2t_{n-1})x_{n-1}). \quad (172)$$

622 Note that for linear equations as the one considered here, you can explicitly compute  $x_{n+1}$ :

$$x_{n+1} = \frac{1}{1 - \frac{5h}{12}(1 - 2t_{n+1})}(x_n + \frac{h}{12}(8(1 - 2t_n)x_n - (1 - 2t_{n-1})x_{n-1})). \quad (173)$$

623

624 **Example 5.3 (The AM(2) method for a system of ODEs)** Let's consider the initial value prob-  
 625 lem for the system of ODEs

$$\begin{cases} u' = v, \\ v' = t^2 - u. \end{cases} \quad (174)$$

626 with the initial conditions:

$$u(t_0) = 2, \quad v(t_0) = 3. \quad (175)$$

627 Then, the AM(2) method for IVP (174)-(175) reads

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+1} = \mathbf{x}_n + \frac{h}{12}(8\mathbf{f}_n + 5\mathbf{f}_{n+1} - \mathbf{f}_{n-1}), \quad (176)$$

628 where

$$\mathbf{x}_n = \begin{pmatrix} u_n \\ v_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{f}_n = \begin{pmatrix} v_n \\ t_n^2 - u_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{f}_{n+1} = \begin{pmatrix} v_{n+1} \\ t_{n+1}^2 - u_{n+1} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{f}_{n-1} = \begin{pmatrix} v_{n-1} \\ t_{n-1}^2 - u_{n-1} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (177)$$

629

## 630 5.2 The local truncation error of the AM(2) method

631 I believe you can easily see that the local truncation error of the AM(2) method is of order 4. To  
 632 show it rigorously, one should plug (156) and (157) into (161), and subtract the result from the  
 633 Taylor expansion of the exact solution. The substitution of (156) and (157) into (161) gives

$$\begin{aligned} x(t_n + h) &= x(t_n) + \frac{h}{12}(8x'(t_n) + 5(x'(t) + hx''(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x'''(t) + \frac{h^3}{6}x''''(t)) \\ &\quad - (x'(t) - hx''(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x'''(t) - \frac{h^3}{6}x''''(t))) + \mathcal{O}(h^5) \\ &= x(t_n) + \frac{h}{12}(12x'(t_n) + 6hx''(t_n) + 2h^2x'''(t_n) + h^3x''''(t_n)) + \mathcal{O}(h^5) \\ &= x(t_n) + hx'(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t_n) + \frac{h^3}{6}x'''(t_n) + \frac{h^4}{12}x''''(t_n) + \mathcal{O}(h^5) \end{aligned} \quad (178)$$

<sup>634</sup> Here, we use  $x(t_n + h)$  notation to distinguish the approximated solution from the Taylor expansion  
<sup>635</sup> of the exact solution denoted as  $x(t + h)$ . Now, we find the local truncation error:

$$x(t + h) - x(t_n + h) = \mathcal{O}(h^4). \quad (179)$$

<sup>636</sup> **5.3 The global error of the AM(2) method**

<sup>637</sup> The proof of convergence of the AM(2) method is very similar to that one of the AB(2) method.

<sup>638</sup> **Theorem 5.1 (Convergence of the AM(2) method for the general IVP)** *The 2-step Adams-Moulton method for the IVP*

$$x' = f(t, x), \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [0, t_N], \quad (180)$$

<sup>640</sup> with a Lipschitz continuous functions  $f(t, x)$ , and  $f \in C^3$  converges, and the global error satisfies:

$$\max_{n \in [0, N]} |x(t_n) - x_n| \leq Bh^3, \quad B = \text{const} > 0. \quad (181)$$

<sup>641</sup>

<sup>642</sup> **Proof.** The AM(2) method for IVP (180) is given by

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{12}(8f_n + 5f_{n+1} - f_{n-1}), \quad x_0 = \alpha, \quad t_i := ih, \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N. \quad (182)$$

<sup>643</sup> As it follows from the analysis of the local truncation error of the AM(2)

$$\begin{aligned} e_{n+1} &= x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} \\ &= x(t_n) - x_n + \frac{2h}{3}(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) + \frac{5h}{12}(f(t_{n+1}, x(t_{n+1})) - f_{n+1}) - \frac{h}{12}(f(t_{n-1}, x(t_{n-1})) - f_{n-1}) + R \\ &= e_n + \frac{2h}{3}(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) + \frac{5h}{12}(f(t_{n+1}, x(t_{n+1})) - f_{n+1}) - \frac{h}{12}(f(t_{n-1}, x(t_{n-1})) - f_{n-1}) + R, \end{aligned} \quad (183)$$

where  $R = \mathcal{O}(h^4)$ . As in Theorem 4.1, equation (183) shows us how the global error at time  $t_{n+1}$  depends on the propagated error

$$e_n + \frac{2h}{3}(f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n) + \frac{5h}{12}(f(t_{n+1}, x(t_{n+1})) - f_{n+1}) - \frac{h}{12}(f(t_{n-1}, x(t_{n-1})) - f_{n-1})$$

<sup>644</sup> and the local truncation error given by the reminder  $R$ . Taking the absolute value of (183) yields

$$\begin{aligned} |e_{n+1}| &\leq |e_n| + \frac{2h}{3}|f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n| + \frac{5h}{12}|f(t_{n+1}, x(t_{n+1})) - f_{n+1}| + \frac{h}{12}|f(t_{n-1}, x(t_{n-1})) - f_{n-1}| + |R| \\ &\quad \text{using the Lipschitz continuity of } f \text{ we have } |f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f_n| \leq L|x(t_n) - x_n|, \quad L = \text{const} \geq 0, \\ &\leq |e_n| + \frac{2\hat{h}}{3}|x(t_n) - x_n| + \frac{5\hat{h}}{12}|x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1}| + \frac{\hat{h}}{12}|x(t_{n-1}) - x_{n-1}| + |R|, \quad \hat{h} := hL, \\ &\leq |e_n| + \frac{2\hat{h}}{3}|e_n| + \frac{5\hat{h}}{12}|e_{n+1}| + \frac{\hat{h}}{12}|e_{n-1}| + |R| \\ &\leq (1 + \frac{2\hat{h}}{3}\tilde{A}^{-1})|e_n| + \frac{\hat{h}}{12}\tilde{A}^{-1}|e_{n-1}| + \tilde{A}^{-1}|R|, \quad \tilde{A} := 1 - \frac{5\hat{h}}{12}. \end{aligned} \quad (184)$$

645 Introducing the error bounding function  $\delta_n = \max_{\substack{0 \leq i \leq n \\ n \in [0, N]}} |e_i|$  and rewriting (184) in terms of  $\delta_n$  gives

$$\delta_{n+1} \leq A\delta_n + \tilde{A}^{-1}|R|, \quad A := (1 + \frac{9\hat{h}}{12})\tilde{A}^{-1}. \quad (185)$$

646 For  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N - 1$  we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_0 &= x(t_0) - x_0 = 0, \\ \delta_1 &\leq A\delta_0 + \tilde{A}^{-1}|R_1|, \\ \delta_2 &\leq A\delta_1 + \tilde{A}^{-1}|R_2| = A^2\delta_0 + (A|R_1| + |R_2|)\tilde{A}^{-1}, \\ \delta_3 &\leq A\delta_2 + \tilde{A}^{-1}|R_3| = A^3\delta_0 + (A^2|R_1| + A|R_2| + |R_3|)\tilde{A}^{-1}, \\ &\dots \\ \delta_N &\leq \sum_{i=1}^N A^{N-i}|R_i|\tilde{A}^{-1}. \end{aligned} \quad (186)$$

647 The error in the initial condition is zero, since the initial condition is known exactly.

648 Since<sup>1</sup>  $|R_i| \leq Ch^4$ ,  $C = \text{const} > 0$ , we can estimate (186) as

$$\delta_N \leq \sum_{i=1}^N A^{N-i}Ch^4\tilde{A}^{-1}. \quad (187)$$

649 As in Theorem 3.1, we use the geometric series

$$1 + A + A^2 + \dots + A^{N-1} = \frac{A^N - 1}{A - 1} \quad (188)$$

650 in (187) which gives

$$\delta_N \leq \frac{A^N - 1}{A - 1}Ch^4\tilde{A}^{-1}. \quad (189)$$

651 Then we rewrite  $A$  as

$$A := 1 + \frac{14\hat{h}}{12}\tilde{A}^{-1}, \quad (190)$$

652 and use the following inequality

$$A \leq e^{\frac{14\hat{h}}{12}\tilde{A}^{-1}}. \quad (191)$$

653 Exponentiating (191) to the power of  $N$  gives

$$\begin{aligned} A^N &\leq e^{\frac{14\hat{h}}{12}\tilde{A}^{-1}N} \\ &\leq e^{t_N \frac{14L}{12}\tilde{A}^{-1}}. \end{aligned} \quad (192)$$

654 Using (192) in (189) leads to

$$\delta_N \leq Bh^3 \quad (193)$$

655 where  $B := 12C(e^{t_N \frac{14L}{12}\tilde{A}^{-1}} - 1)/(14L)$ .

656 Thus, we have proved that the 2-step Adams-Moulton method converges to the exact solution with order  $p = 3$ . ■

658 **Lecture 6 Consistency of linear multistep methods**

659 In one of the lectures before, we have already seen how to derive the most accurate 1-step method.  
 660 Now, let us talk about the development of new LMMs in general.

**Definition 6.1 (Linear Difference Operator of the LMM)** *The linear difference operator  $\mathcal{L}_h$  associated with the LMM*

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m x_{n+m} = h \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \quad , \text{ where } \alpha_m, \beta_m = \text{const} \in \mathbb{R}, \alpha_s = 1$$

661 is defined for an arbitrary continuously differentiable function  $z(t)$  by

$$\mathcal{L}_h z(t) = \sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m z(t + mh) - h \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m z'(t + mh). \quad (194)$$

662 The development of new LMMs amounts to finding coefficients  $\{\alpha_m, \beta_m\}$  to ensure that the  
 663 resulting LMM is convergent.

**Definition 6.2 (Consistency of the linear difference operator)** *The linear difference operator  $\mathcal{L}_h$  is said to be consistent of order  $p$  if*

$$\mathcal{L}_h z(t) = \mathcal{O}(h^{p+1}), \quad p > 0.$$

664 If  $p = 0$  then the linear difference operator is inconsistent.

665 **Definition 6.3 (Consistency of the LMM)** *An LMM which linear difference operator is consistent of order  $p > 0$  is said to be consistent with the ODE  $x' = f(t, x)$ , otherwise the LMM is called inconsistent.*

668 **Note that the method is of no use if it is inconsistent!**

669 **6.1 Is the Euler method consistent?**

670 The Euler method for the ODE  $x' = f(t, x)$  is

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_n. \quad (195)$$

671 The linear difference operator (LDO) for the Euler method is then given by

$$\mathcal{L}_h z(t) = z(t + h) - z(t) - h z'(t). \quad (196)$$

672 In order to compute the order of consistent of the LDO associated with the Euler method we plug  
 673 the Taylor expansion of  $z(t + h)$  into (196) and get

$$\mathcal{L}_h z(t) = \frac{h^2}{2} z''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3) = \mathcal{O}(h^2). \quad (197)$$

674 Thus the Euler method is consistent of order  $p = 1$ .

675 **Remark 6.1** *Another way to figure out whether the numerical method is consistent or inconsistent  
 676 is to look at the local truncation error. If the local truncation error is of order  $p > 1$  then the  
 677 method is consistent of order  $p - 1$ , otherwise it is inconsistent. For example, the local truncation*

678 error of Euler's method is of order  $p = 2$  therefore the method is consistent of order  $p = 1$  as shown  
679 above.

680 **All the methods we have studied so far are consistent!**

681 **6.2 What are the conditions for the 1-step LMM to be consistent?**

682 As we know, in order for the LMM to be consistent of order  $p$  it must have the associated LDO  
683 of order  $p > 1$  or, equivalently, the same order of the local truncation error. This gives rise to  
684 the question: what are the conditions which make the LMM consistent, or what are the conditions  
685 which give the associated LDO of order  $p > 1$ ? In order to answer the question we will take the  
686 LDO of the 1-step LMM in the general form, namely

$$\mathcal{L}_h z(t) = z(t + h) + \alpha_0 z(t) - h(\beta_0 z'(t) + \beta_1 z'(t + h)), \quad (198)$$

687 Taylor expand  $z(t + h)$  and  $z'(t + h)$ , and plug the expansions back into (198)

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}_h z(t) &= (z(t) + hz'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}z''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3)) + \alpha_0 z(t) - h(\beta_0 z'(t) + \beta_1(z'(t) + hz''(t)) + \frac{h^2}{2}z'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3)) \\ &= (z(t) + hz'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}z''(t)) + \alpha_0 z(t) - h(\beta_0 z'(t) + \beta_1(z'(t) + hz''(t)) + \mathcal{O}(h^3)) \\ &= (1 + \alpha_0)z(t) + h(1 - \beta_0 - \beta_1)z'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}(1 - 2\beta_1)z''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3). \end{aligned} \quad (199)$$

688 Then, in order to make the LMM consistent, we have to choose the coefficients  $\alpha_0$ ,  $\beta_0$ ,  $\beta_1$  such  
689 that LDO (199) is of order at least  $p = 2$ . Hence, these conditions are

$$\begin{cases} 1 + \alpha_0 = 0, \\ 1 - \beta_0 - \beta_1 = 0. \end{cases} \quad (200)$$

690 System (200) has to be solved to find a particular set of coefficients for the method.

691 **6.2.1 The  $\theta$ -method**

692 The general solution of the system is given by  $\alpha_0 = -1$  and  $\beta_0 = 1 - \beta_1$ , where  $\beta_1 = \theta$ . The  
693 parameter  $\theta$  gives rise to a one-parameter family of solutions, which in turn leads to a one-parameter  
694 family of LMMs known as the  $\theta$ -method:

$$\text{The } \theta\text{-method: } x_{n+1} = x_n + h(\theta f_{n+1} + (1 - \theta)f_n) \quad (201)$$

695 You can easily see that different values of  $\theta$  give different method. In particular,

$$\begin{cases} \theta = 0 \Rightarrow \text{The Euler method}, \\ \theta = \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow \text{The Trapezoidal rule}, \\ \theta = 1 \Rightarrow \text{The Backward Euler method}. \end{cases} \quad (202)$$

696 **6.3 What are the conditions for the 2-step LMM to be consistent?**

697 We can derive the consistency condition for the 2-step LMM in the same manner as we did it for  
698 the 1-step LMM. First, we take the LDO corresponding to the 2-step LMM

$$\mathcal{L}_h z(t) = z(t + 2h) + \alpha_1 z(t + h) + \alpha_0 z(t) - h(\beta_0 z'(t) + \beta_1 z'(t + h) + \beta_2 z'(t + 2h)), \quad (203)$$

699 Taylor expand  $z(t+h)$ ,  $z(t+2h)$ ,  $z'(t+h)$ , and  $z'(t+2h)$ , and plug the expansions back into (203)

$$\begin{aligned} 700 \quad \mathcal{L}_h z(t) &= z(t) + 2hz'(t) + 2h^2z''(t) + \frac{4h^3}{3}z'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4) \\ &\quad + \alpha_1(z(t) + hz'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}z''(t) + \frac{h^3}{6}z'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4)) + \alpha_0 z(t) \\ &\quad - h(\beta_0 z'(t) \\ &\quad + \beta_1(z'(t) + hz''(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}z'''(t) + \frac{h^3}{6}z''''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4))) \\ &\quad + \beta_2(z'(t) + 2hz''(t) + 2h^2z'''(t) + \frac{4h^3}{3}z''''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4))) \\ &= (1 + \alpha_0 + \alpha_1)z(t) + h(2 + \alpha_1 - (\beta_0 + \beta_1 + \beta_2))z'(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^2). \end{aligned} \tag{204}$$

701 Thus, the 2-step LMM is consistent of order  $p = 1$  if

$$\begin{cases} 702 \quad 1 + \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 = 0, \\ 703 \quad 2 + \alpha_1 = \beta_0 + \beta_1 + \beta_2. \end{cases} \tag{205}$$

702 Note that the consistency conditions (205) are the minimum requirement for the method to be  
703 consistent. If one wants to derive an LMM with the highest order of consistency (i.e., the most  
704 accurate one) then the technique used for the derivation of the most accurate one-step method can  
705 be applied in this case too.

#### 706 6.4 What are the conditions for the 3-step LMM to be consistent?

707 Acting in the same manner as before, we write out the LDO corresponding to the 3-step LMM

$$\mathcal{L}_h z(t) = z(t+3h) + \alpha_2 z(t+2h) + \alpha_1 z(t+h) + \alpha_0 z(t) - h(\beta_0 z'(t) + \beta_1 z'(t+h) + \beta_2 z'(t+2h) + \beta_3 z'(t+3h)), \tag{206}$$

708 Taylor expand  $z(t+h)$ ,  $z(t+2h)$ ,  $z(t+3h)$ ,  $z'(t+2)$ ,  $z'(t+2h)$ ,  $z'(t+3h)$  up to order 2, and  
709 plug these expansions back into (206)

$$\begin{aligned} 710 \quad \mathcal{L}_h z(t) &= z(t) + 3hz'(t) + \alpha_2(z(t) + 2hz'(t)) + \alpha_1(z(t) + hz'(t)) + \alpha_0 z(t) \\ &\quad - h(\beta_0 z'(t) + \beta_1 z'(t) + \beta_2 z'(t) + \beta_3 z'(t)) + \mathcal{O}(h^2). \end{aligned} \tag{207}$$

710 Note that we do not really need terms of order higher than 2 in (207), since we only want to show  
711 that the method is consistent. Thus, the 3-step LMM is consistent of order  $p = 1$  if

$$\begin{cases} 712 \quad 1 + \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 = 0, \\ 713 \quad 3 + 2\alpha_2 + \alpha_1 = \beta_0 + \beta_1 + \beta_2 + \beta_3. \end{cases} \tag{208}$$

#### 712 6.5 How to find a 2-step LMM with the highest order of consistency

713 As with the derivation of the 1-step LMM, it is very advisable to take some time to think about how  
714 would you approach this problem.

715 The general roadmap of the development looks exactly the same as for the 1-step method.

##### 716 1. Fix the form of a two-step method.

717 Let it be

$$x_{n+2} + \alpha_0 x_n = h(\beta_1 f_{n+1} + \beta_0 f_n). \tag{209}$$

718 In this particular form, we take  $\alpha_1 = \beta_2 = 0$  for simplicity of exhibition.

**2. Find the maximum order of consistency of the LDO.**

The LDO associated with LMM (209) is

$$\mathcal{L}_h z(t) = z(t+2h) + \alpha_0 z(t) - h(\beta_1 z'(t+h) + \beta_0 z'(t)) \quad (210)$$

To get the maximum order of consistency, we Taylor expand  $z(t+2h)$  and  $z'(t+h)$ , plug them into (210):

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}_h z(t) &= z(t+2h) + \alpha_0 z(t) - h(\beta_1 z'(t+h) + \beta_0 z'(t)) \\ &= z(t) + 2hz'(t) + 2h^2 z''(t) + \frac{4h^3}{3} z'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4) + \alpha_0 z(t) \\ &\quad - h(\beta_1(z'(t) + hz''(t) + \frac{h^2}{2} z'''(t) + \frac{h^3}{6} z''''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4)) + \beta_0 z'(t)) \\ &= (1 + \alpha_0)z(t) + h(2 - (\beta_1 + \beta_0))z'(t) + h^2(2 - \beta_1)z''(t) + h^3(\frac{4}{3} - \frac{\beta_1}{2})z'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4). \end{aligned} \quad (211)$$

Now, we have to find the unknown coefficients  $\alpha_0$ ,  $\beta_0$ ,  $\beta_1$  which maximize the order of consistency of (211). These coefficients can be found as the solution to the following system:

$$\begin{cases} 1 + \alpha_0 = 0, \\ 2 - (\beta_1 + \beta_0) = 0, \\ 2 - \beta_1 = 0. \end{cases} \quad (212)$$

The solution is given by

$$\begin{cases} \alpha_0 = -1, \\ \beta_0 = 0, \\ \beta_1 = 2. \end{cases} \quad (213)$$

Upon substitution of (213) into (209) gives the 2-step LMM with the highest order of consistency:

$$\text{The Leapfrog method: } x_{n+2} = x_n + 2hf_{n+1}. \quad (214)$$

**Can we have even higher order of consistency with (209)?**

Getting back to the derivation of consistency conditions for higher-step LMMs it is worth noting that the same steps as for the derivation of lower-step LMMs should be taken. However, instead of doing it we will shift our attention to characteristic polynomials, which will allow us to reformulate the consistency conditions and look at it at a different angle.

**Definition 6.4 (Characteristic polynomials of the LMM)** *The first and second characteristic polynomials of the s-step LMM*

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m x_{n+m} = h \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \quad \text{where } \alpha_m, \beta_m = \text{const} \in \mathbb{R}, \alpha_s = 1$$

are defined to be

$$\text{First characteristic polynomial: } \rho(r) = \sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m r^m, \quad (215)$$

$$\text{Second characteristic polynomial: } \sigma(r) = \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m r^m.$$

735 **6.6 Consistency in terms of characteristic polynomials**

736 Now we can reformulate the consistency conditions in term of characteristic polynomials.

**Theorem 6.1** *The s-step method*

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m x_{n+m} = h \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \quad \alpha_m, \beta_m = \text{const} \in \mathbb{R}, \quad \alpha_s = 1$$

737 is consistent with the ODE  $x' = f(t, x)$  if and only if

$$\rho(1) = 0 \text{ and } \rho'(1) = \sigma(1). \quad (216)$$

738 You can easily check that (216) is the same as (200) or (205).

739 **6.7 Consistency and convergence**

740 What can convergence tell us about consistency?

741 **Theorem 6.2** *A convergent LMM is consistent.*

**Proof.** Suppose that the s-step LMM

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m x_{n+m} = h \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \quad \text{where } \alpha_m, \beta_m = \text{const} \in \mathbb{R}, \alpha_s = 1$$

742 is convergent, namely  $x_{n+m} \rightarrow x(t^* + mh)$ ,  $m = 0, 1, \dots, s$ , as  $h \rightarrow 0$  when  $t^* = t_n$ . Here,  $x_{n+m}$  743 is a numerical solution, and  $x(t^* + mh)$  is an exact solution.

744 Taking the limit of the LDO corresponding to the the LMM gives

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m x(t^* + mh) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} h \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m f(t^* + mh, x(t^* + mh)). \quad (217)$$

745 Thus, we have

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m x(t^*) = 0 \Rightarrow \rho(1)x(t^*) = 0. \quad (218)$$

746 Since  $x(t^*) \neq 0$  then  $\rho(1) = 0$  to satisfy  $\rho(1)x(t^*) = 0$ . Thus, we have proved that in order for the 747 LMM to be convergent it must satisfy the first consistency condition  $\rho(1) = 0$ .

748 The next step is to prove that the convergent LMM satisfies the second consistency condition 749  $\rho'(1) = \sigma(1)$ . For doing so, we rewrite (217) as

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{h} \sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m x(t^* + mh) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} h \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m f(t^* + mh, x(t^* + mh)). \quad (219)$$

750 The right hand side of (219) becomes

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m f(t^*, x(t^*)) = \sigma(1)f(t^*, x(t^*)). \quad (220)$$

751 To proceed with the left hand side, we apply the L'Hopital's rule, and get

$$\sum_{m=0}^s m\alpha_m x'(t^*) = \rho'(1)x'(t^*). \quad (221)$$

752 Equating (220) and (221) gives

$$\rho'(1)x'(t^*) = \sigma(1)f(t^*, x(t^*)). \quad (222)$$

753 Using the differential equation  $x'(t^*) = f(t^*, x(t^*))$  in (222) results in the second consistency condition:

$$\rho'(1) = \sigma(1). \quad (223)$$

755 Thus we have proved that the s-step convergent LMM is consistent. ■

756 Up to now, all methods we studied happened to be convergent and consistent. It might seem  
757 like consistency can imply convergence. However, it is not always true. Let us consider a method  
758 which is consistent but not convergent (divergent).

760 **Example 6.1 (Consistent but divergent LMM)** Consider the following 2-step LMM

$$x_{n+2} + 4x_{n+1} - 5x_n = h(4f_{n+1} + 2f_n). \quad (224)$$

761 To show the method is consistent we can simply check the consistency conditions for the 2-step  
762 LMM, which are

$$\begin{cases} 1 + \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 = 0, \\ 2 + \alpha_1 = \beta_0 + \beta_1 + \beta_2. \end{cases} \quad (225)$$

763 Method (224) is consistent, since it satisfies the consistency conditions, namely  $\alpha_1 = 4$ ,  $\alpha_0 = -5$ ,  
764  $\beta_1 = 4$ , and  $\beta_0 = 2$ .

765 To show that the method is convergent or divergent we have to analyse the behaviour of the  
766 global error. For this, we first have to find the local truncation error. The LDO corresponding to  
767 the method is given by

$$\mathcal{L}_h z(t) = z(t + 2h) + 4z(t + h) - 5z(t) - h(4z'(t + h) + 2z'(t)), \quad (226)$$

768 Taylor expansion of  $z(t + h)$ ,  $z(t + 2h)$ , and  $z'(t + h)$ , and their substitution into (226)

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}_h z(t) &= z(t) + 2hz'(t) + 2h^2z''(t) + \frac{4h^3}{3}z'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4) \\ &\quad + 4(z(t) + hz'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}z''(t) + \frac{h^3}{6}z'''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4)) - 5z(t) \\ &\quad - h(4(z'(t) + hz''(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}z'''(t) + \frac{h^3}{6}z''''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^4)) + 2z'(t)) \\ &= \mathcal{O}(h^4). \end{aligned} \quad (227)$$

769 Hence, the method is consistent of order  $p = 3$ . Can you check this is correct?

770 **Theorem 6.3** The 2-step LMM (224) for the general IVP

$$x' = f(t, x), \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N] \quad (228)$$

771 diverges.

<sup>772</sup> **Can you prove this theorem? Or, can you show by example that the method diverges? ▲**

<sup>773</sup> In order to understand why consistent methods can diverge we will study finite difference equations  
<sup>774</sup> and how they are related to the divergence of numerical methods.

## 775 Lecture 7 Linear difference equations (LDEs)

776 A detailed introduction into the theory of LDEs is beyond the scope of this course, therefore we  
777 limit ourselves only to discussing the material necessary for the purpose of this course. Our goal  
778 here is to know how solve an equation of the form

$$x_{n+2} + ax_{n+1} + bx_n = g_n, \quad (229)$$

779 with  $a, b$  being constants, and  $g_n$  being a function.

### 780 7.1 First-order inhomogeneous LDE $x_{n+1} = ax_n + b$

781 Let us start from a first order inhomogeneous LDE

$$x_{n+1} = ax_n + b, n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (230)$$

782 with unknowns  $\{x_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots}$  and constants  $a, b$ .

783 Since the initial condition  $x_0$  is supposed to be known, we can solve this equation by computing  
784 its solution via the following sequence

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= ax_0 + b, \\ x_2 &= ax_1 + b = a^2x_0 + (a+1)b, \\ x_3 &= ax_2 + b = a^3x_0 + (a^2+a+1)b, \\ &\dots \end{aligned} \quad (231)$$

785 We find the general solution to (230), as a sum of the general solution to the homogeneous equation  
786 and a particular solution to the inhomogeneous equation (230). First, we consider the homogeneous  
787 equation by setting  $b = 0$  in (230):

$$x_{n+1} = ax_n, n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (232)$$

788 and set  $x_0 = A$  ( $A = \text{const}$ ). Thus, the general solution to the homogeneous equation (232) is

$$x_n = a^n A, n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (233)$$

789 We can now seek for a particular solution of the inhomogeneous equation (230) in the form of a  
790 constant sequence

$$x_{n+1} = x_n = C, C = \text{const}. \quad (234)$$

791 Substitution of (234) into (230) gives

$$C = aC + b \Rightarrow C = \frac{b}{1-a}, a \neq 1. \quad (235)$$

792 The sum of the particular solution (235) and the general solution (233) gives the general solution  
793 of the inhomogeneous equation (229) gives the general solution of the inhomogeneous equation:

$$x_n = Aa^n + \frac{b}{1-a}, a \neq 1. \quad (236)$$

794 In fact, this is only one part of the solution which corresponds to the case  $a \neq 1$ . If  $a = 1$  then  
795 equation (230)

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + b, n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (237)$$

796 or

$$x_{n+1} - x_n = b, n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (238)$$

797 Using the telescoping series property

$$x_n = (x_n - x_{n-1}) + (x_{n-1} - x_{n-2}) + \dots + (x_1 - x_0) + x_0 \quad (239)$$

798 together with (238) we find

$$x_n = nb + x_0, n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (240)$$

799 which upon Substitution of  $x_0 = A$  gives

$$x_n = A + nb, n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (241)$$

800 Thus, the general solution to (230) is

$$x_n = \begin{cases} Aa^n + \frac{b}{1-a}, & a \neq 1, \\ A + nb, & a = 1. \end{cases} \quad (242)$$

801 To get the solution of equation (229), we need to consider another inhomogeneous equation.

## 802 7.2 First-order inhomogeneous LDE $x_{n+1} = ax_n + bk^n$

803 Let us consider an equation of the form

$$x_{n+1} = ax_n + bk^n, n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (243)$$

804 with  $a, b, k$  being constants.

805 To get the solution of (243), we use the substitution  $x_n = k^n y_n$  that yields

$$k^{n+1} y_{n+1} = ak^n y_n + bk^n, \quad (244)$$

806 or

$$y_{n+1} = \frac{a}{k} y_n + \frac{b}{k}. \quad (245)$$

807 Equation (245) is in the form of (230). Hence, the solution to (245) is given by

$$y_n = \begin{cases} A\left(\frac{a}{k}\right)^n + \frac{\frac{b}{k}}{1 - \frac{a}{k}}, & \frac{a}{k} \neq 1, \\ A + n\frac{b}{k}, & \frac{a}{k} = 1. \end{cases} \quad (246)$$

808 Or, in terms of  $x_n$ , it is

$$x_n = \begin{cases} Aa^n + \frac{b}{k-a}k^n, & \frac{a}{k} \neq 1, \\ Ak^n + nbk^{n-1}, & \frac{a}{k} = 1. \end{cases} \quad (247)$$

809 Now, let us switch to second-order LDEs.

810 **7.3 Second-order homogeneous LDE**  $x_{n+2} + ax_{n+1} + bx_n = 0$

811 We start by solving a homogeneous second-order

$$x_{n+2} + ax_{n+1} + bx_n = 0, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (248)$$

812 with  $a, b$  being constants.

813 This equation has the solution of the form  $x_n = Ar^n$  ( $A = \text{const}$ ) with  $r$  being a root of the  
814 quadratic equation

$$r^2 + ar + b = 0 \quad (249)$$

815 called **the auxiliary equation**. Suppose equation (249) has two roots  $r_1$  and  $r_2$ . Then, we can  
816 recast (249) in the form

$$(r - r_1)(r - r_2) = r^2 - (r_1 + r_2)r + r_1r_2 = r^2 + ar + b = 0, \quad a := -(r_1 + r_2), \quad b := r_1r_2. \quad (250)$$

817 Thus, the homogeneous equation (248) becomes

$$x_{n+2} - (r_1 + r_2)x_{n+1} + r_1r_2x_n = 0, \quad (251)$$

818 or

$$(x_{n+2} - r_1x_{n+1}) - r_2(x_{n+1} - r_1x_n) = 0, \quad (252)$$

819 or

$$y_{n+1} - r_2y_n = 0, \quad \text{where } y_n = x_{n+1} - r_1x_n. \quad (253)$$

820 We already know that equation (253) has the general solution  $y_n = Cr_2^n$ ,  $C = \text{const}$ . Then,

$$x_{n+1} - r_1x_n = Cr_2^n. \quad (254)$$

821 We also know the general solution of (254):

$$x_n = \begin{cases} Ar_1^n + Br_2^n, & r_1 \neq r_2, \\ (A + nD)r_2^n, & r_1 = r_2, \end{cases} \quad (255)$$

822 where  $B := C/(r_2 - r_1)$  and  $D := C/r_2$ .

823 For the third-order homogeneous LDE the solution is given by

$$x_n = \begin{cases} Ar_1^n + Br_2^n + Cr_3^n, & r_1 \neq r_2 \neq r_3, \\ Ar_1^n + (B + nC)r_2^n, & r_1 \neq r_2, r_2 = r_3, \\ (A + nB)r_1^n + Cr_3^n, & r_1 = r_2, r_2 \neq r_3, \\ (A + nB + n^2C)r_1^n, & r_1 = r_2 = r_3. \end{cases} \quad (256)$$

824 As can be seen from (255), the solution of the second-order homogeneous LDE is bounded if all  
825 the roots of its auxiliary equation  $|r_i| \leq 1$  and any roots  $|r_k| = 1$  are simple, or if all roots  $|r_i| < 1$ .  
826 The same is true for any  $k$ -order homogeneous or inhomogeneous LDE, but we will not derive this  
827 result in the course (for example, see ???).

## 828 Lecture 8 Convergence and zero stability

829 Our study of linear difference equations brings us to the series of important results.

830 **Definition 8.1 (The root condition)** A polynomial of degree  $n$  is said to satisfy the root condition if all its roots  $|r_i|_{i \in [1,n]} \leq 1$  and any roots that satisfy  $|r_k| = 1$  are simple.

832 **Definition 8.2 (The strict root condition)** A polynomial of degree  $n$  is said to satisfy the strict root condition if all its roots  $|r_i|_{i \in [1,n]} < 1$ .

834 **Definition 8.3 (Zero stability)** An LMM is said to be zero-stable if its first characteristic polynomial,  $\rho(r)$ , satisfies the root condition.

836 **Theorem 8.1 (Dahlquist equivalence theorem)** An LMM is convergent  $\iff$  it is both consistent and zero-stable.

838 **Theorem 8.2** The global error of a convergent LMM equals to its order of consistency.

839 Being armed with new knowledge of why a numerical method can diverge let us get back to  
840 the consistent but divergent LMM, and study how our new findings can help us to understand the  
841 reason of its divergence.

### 842 8.1 Back to consistent but divergent LMM $x_{n+2} + 4x_{n+1} - 5x_n = h(4f_{n+1} + 2f_n)$

Application of the LMM

$$x_{n+2} + 4x_{n+1} - 5x_n = h(4f_{n+1} + 2f_n)$$

843 to the model problem

$$x' = 0, \quad x(t_0) = 1, \quad t \in [0, 1] \tag{257}$$

844 gives the second-order homogeneous LDE

$$x_{n+2} + 4x_{n+1} - 5x_n = 0. \tag{258}$$

845 The characteristic equation for (258) is

$$r^2 + 4r - 5 = 0, \tag{259}$$

846 which has the roots  $r_1 = 1$  and  $r_2 = -5$ . It is already clear (see the Dahlquist equivalence theorem)  
847 that the method diverges, since it is not zero-stable. However, we proceed with the example to figure  
848 out the exact reason of its divergence. We know that the solution of the second-order homogeneous  
849 LDE is given by (255). In this particular case, we use the solution for which  $r_1 \neq r_2$ , namely

$$x_n = Ar_1^n + Br_2^n. \tag{260}$$

850 Constants  $A$  and  $B$  are not known, and can be found from the initial conditions; we need two initial  
851 conditions for the LMM to start because it is a 2-step LMM. The first initial condition is known  
852 from the problem formulation ( $x_0 = 1$ ). We can take  $x_1 = 1 + h$ , since the only extra requirement  
853 for the LMM to converge is that all initial conditions tend to  $x_0$  as the time step  $h \rightarrow 0$ ;  $x_1 \rightarrow 0$  as  
854  $h \rightarrow 0$ . Based on this, we write a system of equations to be solved for  $A$  and  $B$ :

$$\begin{cases} x_0 = Ar_1^0 + Br_2^0, \\ x_1 = Ar_1^1 + Br_2^1. \end{cases} \tag{261}$$

855 Substitution of  $x_0$ ,  $x_1$ , and  $r_1$ ,  $r_2$  into (261) leads to

$$\begin{cases} 1 = A + B, \\ 1 + h = A - 5B. \end{cases} \quad (262)$$

856 The solution of (262) is

$$\begin{cases} A = 1 + \frac{h}{6}, \\ B = -\frac{h}{6}. \end{cases} \quad (263)$$

857 Upon substitution of this solution into (260) we get

$$x_n = \left(1 + \frac{h}{6}\right) - \frac{h}{6}(-5)^n. \quad (264)$$

858 Since (257) is integrated over  $[0, t^*]$ ,  $t^* = 1$ , and  $t^* = nh = 1 \Rightarrow h = 1/n$ , we can rewrite (264) as

$$x_n = 1 + \frac{1}{6n}(1 - (-5)^n). \quad (265)$$

859 Clearly,  $x_n$  grows rapidly as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  thus showing that the method diverges.

## 8.2 Convergence of the 3-step LMM

860 Let us consider a 3-step LMM

$$x_{n+3} + x_{n+2} - x_{n+1} - x_n = 10hf_n. \quad (266)$$

862 Does this LMM converge or diverge? To answer the question, we apply the LMM to the same  
863 problem (257)

$$x_{n+3} + x_{n+2} - x_{n+1} - x_n = 0. \quad (267)$$

864 This is a third-order homogeneous LDE with the characteristic polynomial

$$r^3 + r^2 - r - 1 = 0 \quad (268)$$

865 with the roots  $r_1 = 1$ ,  $r_2 = r_3 = -1$ , which rule the LMM out from being convergent. Obviously,  
866 one can use, for example, the initial conditions  $x_1 = 1 + h$  and  $x_2 = 1 + 2h$  which converge to  $x_0$   
867 as  $h \rightarrow 0$  and find the solution  $x_n$  to see that the method is divergent. For this, one should use the  
868 second solution in (256), i.e.

$$Ar_1^n + (B + nC)r_2^n, \quad r_1 \neq r_2, r_2 = r_3. \quad (269)$$

869 Constants  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  can be found from the following system of linear equations

$$\begin{cases} x_0 = Ar_1^0 + (B + 0C)r_2^0, \\ x_1 = Ar_1^1 + (B + 1C)r_2^1, \\ x_2 = Ar_1^2 + (B + 2C)r_2^2. \end{cases} \quad (270)$$

870 The solution of (270) is given by

$$\begin{cases} A = 1 + h, \\ B = -h, \\ C = h. \end{cases} \quad (271)$$

871 Upon substitution of (271) into (260) we get

$$x_n = (1 + h) + (-h + nh)(-1)^n. \quad (272)$$

872 As can be seen from the global error

$$|x(1) - x_1| \rightarrow 1 \text{ as } h \rightarrow 0, \quad (273)$$

873 thus showing that the method diverges; here,  $x(1)$  is the exact solution of (257), and  $x_1$  is the numerical solution.

875 When developing new LMMs it is very instructive to know the following theorem

876 **Theorem 8.3 (The first Dahlquist barrier)** *The order  $p$  of a stable  $s$ -step LMM satisfies*

$$\begin{cases} p \leq s + 2, & \text{if } s \text{ is even,} \\ p \leq s + 1, & \text{if } s \text{ is odd,} \\ p \leq s, & \text{if } \beta_s \leq 0. \end{cases} \quad (274)$$

### 877 8.3 Consistency and zero-stability in error analysis

878 In order to study how consistency and zero-stability contribute in the global error we consider a linear ODE

$$x' = \lambda x + g(t), \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N] \quad (275)$$

880 and the general  $s$ -step method

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m x_{n+m} = h \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \quad (276)$$

881 where  $\alpha_m, \beta_m = \text{const} \in \mathbb{R}$ , and  $\alpha_s = 1$ . The application of (276) to (275) leads to

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m x_{n+m} = \hat{h} \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m x_{n+m} + h \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m g(t_{n+m}), \quad \hat{h} := \lambda h. \quad (277)$$

882 Using the linear difference operator  $\mathcal{L}_h z(t)$  we can see that the exact solution satisfies the same equation with a reminder  $R_n$ :

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m z(t + mh) = \hat{h} \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m z(t + mh) + h \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m g(t_{n+m}) + R_n. \quad (278)$$

884 Then the global error  $e_n = z(t_n) - x_n$  satisfies the linear difference equation

$$\sum_{m=0}^s (\alpha_m - \hat{h} \beta_m) e_{n+m} = R_n, \quad (279)$$

885 with the starting values  $e_0 = 0, e_1 = x(t_1) - x_1, \dots, e_{s-1} = x(t_{s-1}) - x_{s-1}$ ;  $e_0 = 0$  since  $x(t_0)$  is known exactly.

887 Equation (279) describes how local errors  $R_n$  accumulate into the global error  $e_n$ . To simplify further calculations and make use of our knowledge about linear difference equations we assume that 888  $R_n$  is constant  $R$ . This gives us an  $s$ -order inhomogeneous linear difference equation. The general 889 solution of this equation can be found as a sum of a particular solution of the inhomogeneous 890 equation and the general solution of the homogeneous equation.

892 First, we seek for a particular solution of the inhomogeneous equation in the form of a constant  
 893 sequence  $e_n = C$ ,  $C = \text{const}$ . Substitution of  $e_n = C$  into (279) and taking into account  
 894  $R_n = R = \text{const}$  as well as the consistency condition  $\rho(1) = 0$  (the first characteristic polynomial  
 895  $\rho(r) = \sum_{m=0}^s r^m \alpha_m$ ) we have

$$\sum_{m=0}^s (\alpha_m - \hat{h}\beta_m)C = R, \quad (280)$$

896

$$C = \frac{R}{\hat{h}\sigma(1)}, \quad \sigma(r) = \sum_{m=0}^s r^m \beta_m, \quad (281)$$

897 with  $\sigma(r)$  being the second characteristic polynomial.

898 Second, we have to find the general solution of the homogeneous equation

$$\sum_{m=0}^s (\alpha_m - \hat{h}\beta_m)e_{n+m} = 0. \quad (282)$$

899 If the characteristic polynomial

$$\sum_{m=0}^s (\alpha_m - \hat{h}\beta_m)r^n = 0. \quad (283)$$

900 has distinct roots  $r_i \neq r_j$  for  $i \neq j$  then the solution is given by

$$e_n = \sum_{m=1}^s A_m r_m^n, \quad A_m = \text{const}, \quad m = 1, 2, \dots, s. \quad (284)$$

901 Hence, the general solution of the inhomogeneous equation is

$$e_n = \sum_{m=1}^s A_m r_m^n + C. \quad (285)$$

902 The constants  $A_m$  are determined from the initial conditions for the LMM.

903 If the root condition is violated then the first term grows as  $h \rightarrow 0$  and it leads to divergence,  
 904 therefore we need zero-stability to keep it under control. On the other hand, the local truncation  
 905 error contributes to the global error through the second term which is of order  $\mathcal{O}(h^p)$  if  $R = \mathcal{O}(h^{p+1})$ .  
 906 Thus, consistency of the LMM ensures that the local errors tend to zero as  $h \rightarrow 0$ .

907 **Lecture 9 Absolute stability**

908 What we have learned for now tells us that a convergent method gives a numerical solution which  
 909 is arbitrary close to the exact solution provided that the time step,  $h$ , is sufficiently small. However,  
 910 even a convergent method may not be that much useful in practice if the number of time steps to  
 911 obtain results of even low accuracy is too high. Let us consider several examples to have a better  
 912 grasp of this situation.

913 **Example 9.1 (Forward Euler method)** Consider the IVP

$$x' = -8x + 40(3e^{-t/8} + 1), \quad x(0) = 100, \quad t \in [0, 10]. \quad (286)$$

914 The exact solution to (286) is given by

$$x = \frac{1675}{21}e^{-8t} + \frac{320}{21}e^{-t/8} + 5. \quad (287)$$

915 Note that the first term (287) decays very rapidly, while the second one decays slowly. If you draw  
 916 this solution you will see that it decays quite rapidly up to approximately  $\frac{320}{21} + 5$  and then tends  
 917 slowly to 5. Application of the Forward Euler method ( $x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_n$ ) to (286) gives

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h(-8x_n + 40(3e^{-t_n/8} + 1)). \quad (288)$$

918 The numerical solution for different time steps is presented in Figure 1.

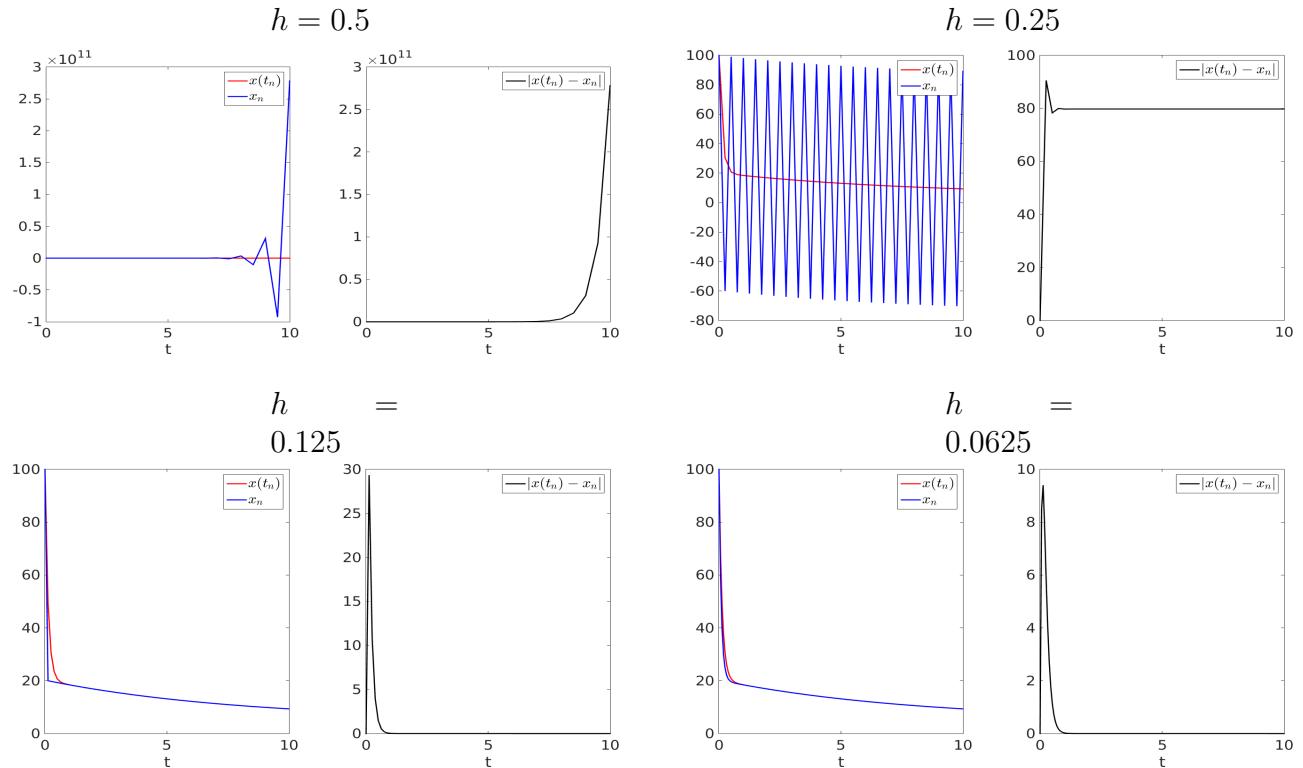


Figure 1: Shown is the exact,  $x(t_n)$ , and numerical,  $x_n$ , solutions to (286) computed with the Forward Euler method with different time steps, and the evolution of the global error  $|x(t_n) - x_n|$ .

919 As can be seen from Figure 1, the Euler method exhibits an instability when the time step is not  
 920 small enough. This behaviour rules the Euler method out from the list of methods which can treat  
 921 problems with rapidly decaying solutions unless the time step is small. On the other hand, when  $h$

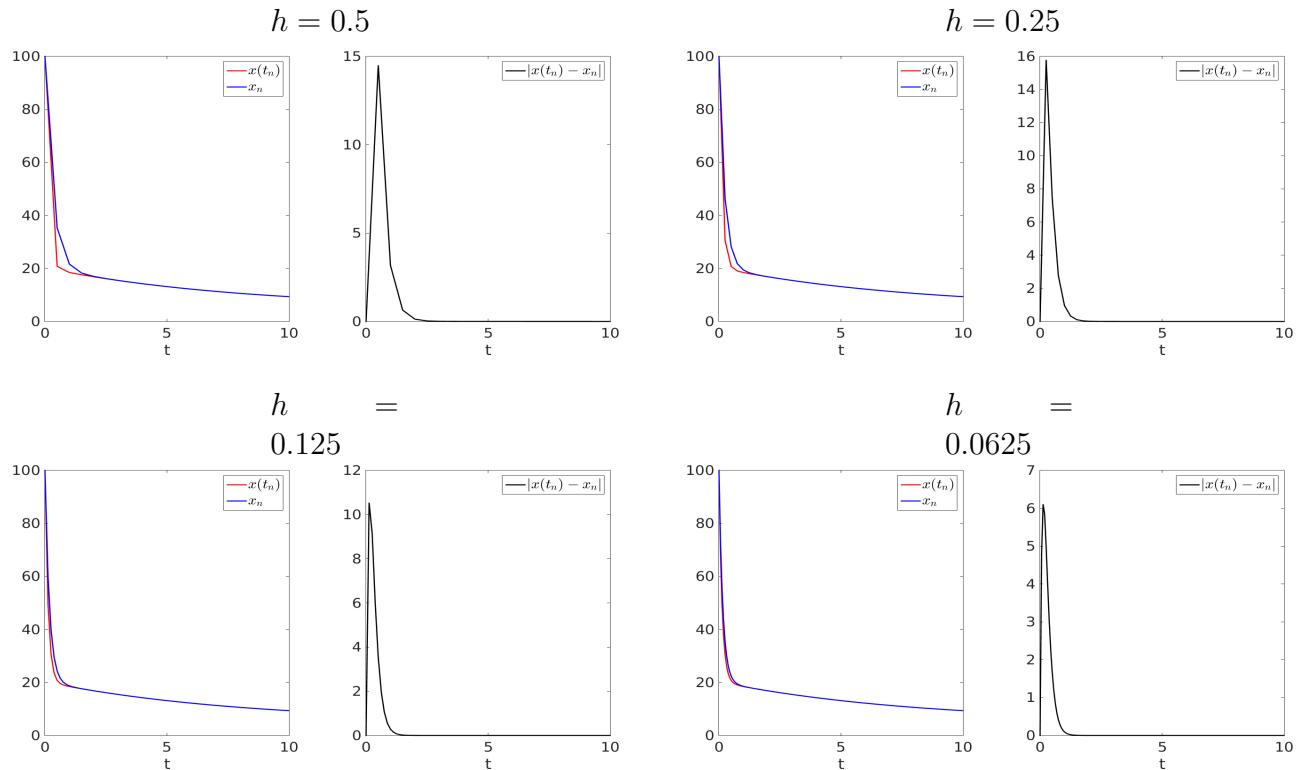


Figure 2: Shown is the exact,  $x(t_n)$ , and numerical,  $x_n$ , solutions to (286) computed with the Backward Euler method with different time steps, and the evolution of the global error  $|x(t_n) - x_n|$ .

is small enough to avoid the instability, the accuracy (especially for the long-term solution) may be way higher than is required. ▲

**Example 9.2 (Backward Euler method)** In this example, we consider the same IVP (286), but will use the Backward Euler method ( $x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_{n+1}$ ):

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h(-8x_{n+1} + 40(3e^{-t_{n+1}/8} + 1)). \quad (289)$$

The numerical solution for different time steps is presented in Figure 2.

Although the accuracy of the Forward and Backward Euler methods is the same, the way the errors propagate is different. The Backward Euler method does not show any instability depending on the time step. Therefore, we can choose the time step on grounds of accuracy. ▲

**Example 9.3 (Forward Euler method)** Let us consider another IVP

$$x' = \frac{1}{8}(5 - x - 5025e^{-8t}), \quad x(0) = 100, \quad t \in [0, 10]. \quad (290)$$

This equation looks different compared to equation (286), but it has the same solution. Application of the Forward Euler method ( $x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_n$ ) to (290) gives

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{8}(5 - x_n - 5025e^{-8t_n}). \quad (291)$$

The numerical solution for different time steps is presented in Figure 3.

The Forward Euler method shows no sign of instability and reacts to the time step size as expected - the smaller the time step is, the smaller the error becomes. ▲

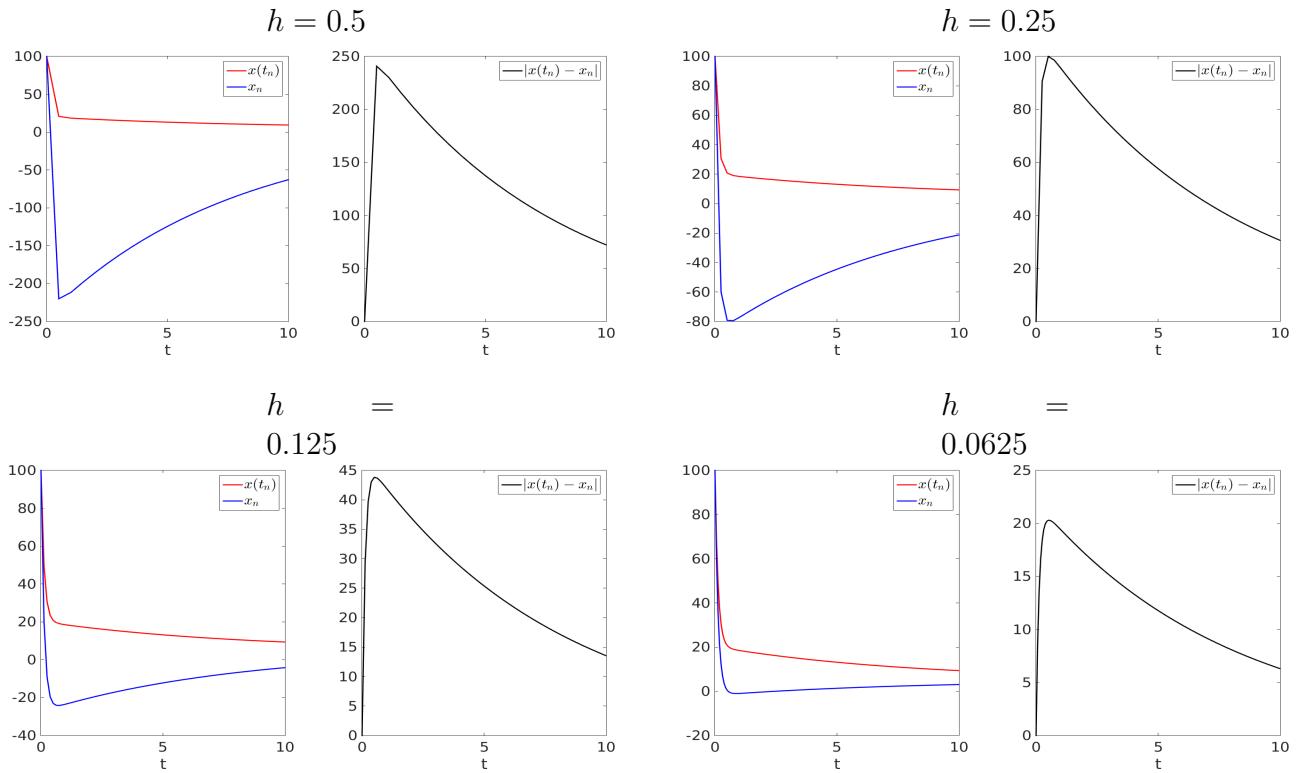


Figure 3: Shown is the exact,  $x(t_n)$ , and numerical,  $x_n$ , solutions to (290) computed with the Forward Euler method with different time steps, and the evolution of the global error  $|x(t_n) - x_n|$ .

936 **Example 9.4 (Backward Euler method)** Now, we apply the Backward Euler method to (290):

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{8}(5 - x_{n+1} - 5025e^{-8t_{n+1}}). \quad (292)$$

937 and show the numerical solution for different time steps in Figure 4.

938 As with the Forward Euler method, the Backward Euler method works as expected. ▲

939 If we take a closer look at (286) and (290) we can see that the forcing functions  $e^{-t/8}$  and  $e^{-8t}$  940 are different. In particular,

- 941 1. The function  $e^{-t/8}$  decays slowly compared to the solution of the homogeneous equation 942  $x' = -8x$  ( $x = e^{-8t}$ ). This suggests that the oscillations in the numerical solution of (286) 943 computed with the Forward Euler method can be associated with the rapidly decaying solution 944 of the homogeneous equation  $x' = -8x$ .
- 945 2. The function  $e^{-8t}$  decays rapidly relative to the solution of the homogeneous equation  $x' =$  946  $-x/8$  ( $x = e^{-t/8}$ ). This suggests that the absence of oscillations in the numerical solution 947 of (290) computed with the Forward Euler method can be associated with the slowly decaying 948 solution of the homogeneous equation  $x' = -x/8$ .

949 Thus, since we have two inhomogeneous equations with the same solutions but different homoge- 950 neous equations, and these inhomogeneous equations demonstrate different behaviour we conclude 951 that this behaviour is due to the difference in the homogeneous equations, and this motivates our 952 study of homogeneous equations.

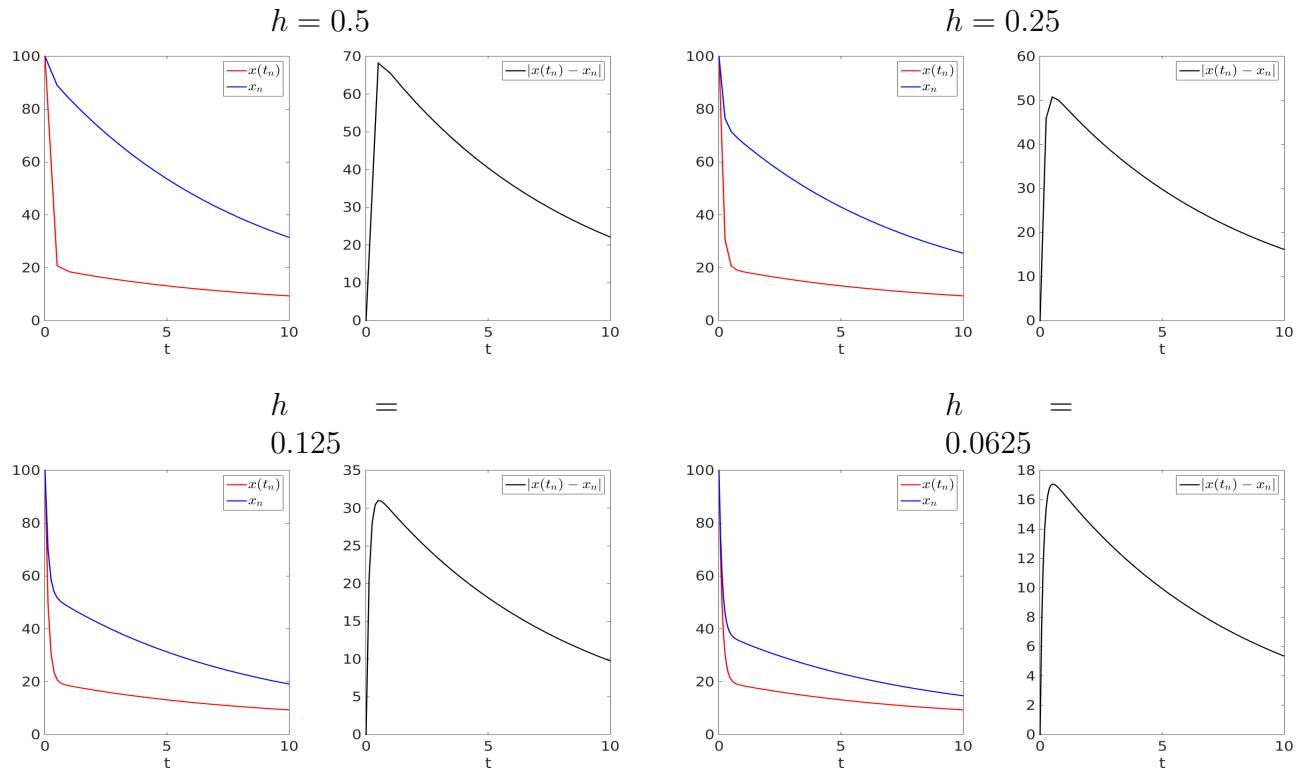


Figure 4: Shown is the exact,  $x(t_n)$ , and numerical,  $x_n$ , solutions to (290) computed with the Backward Euler method with different time steps, and the evolution of the global error  $|x(t_n) - x_n|$ .

953 **9.1 Homogeneous equation**  $x' = \lambda x$

954 Let us consider a homogeneous equation

$$x' = \lambda x, \quad \operatorname{Re}(\lambda) < 0, \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (293)$$

955 The solution of (293) is given by  $x = Ce^{\lambda t}$ ,  $C = \text{const}$ , and  $x(t) \rightarrow 0$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  for any  $C$ . Note  
956 that  $\lambda$  can be complex.

957 Our goal is to find those LMMs which (when applied to (293)) give solutions  $x_n \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$   
958 with a given fixed time step  $h$ . In other words, we will seek for LMMs which can reproduce the  
959 long-time behaviour.

960 **Definition 9.1 (Absolute stability)** An LMM is said to be absolutely stable (when applied to  
961  $x' = \lambda x$ ,  $\operatorname{Re}(\lambda) < 0$  with a given  $h$ ), if the numerical solution  $x_n \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  for any choice of  
962 starting values.

963 The requirement ( $x_n \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ) amounts to the global error being damped as time increases.

It is very helpful and instructive to find a link between absolute stability and roots of the auxiliary  
equation, since it will give a better understanding of absolute stability. For this, we consider the  
general s-step LMM

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m x_{n+m} = h \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \quad \text{where } \alpha_m, \beta_m = \text{const} \in \mathbb{R}, \text{ and } \alpha_s = 1$$

964 and apply it to (293):

$$\sum_{m=0}^s (\alpha_m - \hat{h}\beta_m) x_{n+m} = 0. \quad (294)$$

965 This is a homogeneous linear difference equation with constant coefficient  $\alpha_m$  and  $\beta_m$ . It has  
966 solutions of the form  $x_n = Cr^n$ , where  $C = \text{const}$  and  $r$  is a root of the auxiliary equation

$$p(r) := \sum_{m=0}^s (\alpha_m - \hat{h}\beta_m) r^m = 0. \quad (295)$$

The polynomial

$$p(r) = \rho(r) - \hat{h}\sigma(r)$$

967 is called **the stability polynomial of the LMM**.

968 If the roots of the stability polynomial are all distinct then the solution of LDE (294) is given by

$$x_n = \sum_{m=1}^s A_m r_m^n, \quad A_m = \text{const}. \quad (296)$$

969 In order for  $x_n \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  (for any constant  $A_m$ ), all roots of the stability polynomial must be  
970  $|r_m| < 1$ , i.e. the stability polynomial must satisfy the strict root condition.

971 **9.2 Region and interval of absolute stability**

972 In general, a given LMM is not supposed to be absolutely stable for any choice of  $h$ , therefore we  
973 define the region of absolute stability.

974 **Definition 9.2 (Region of absolute stability)** The set of values in the complex  $\hat{h}$ -plane for which  
975 the LMM is absolutely stable is called the region of absolute stability of the LMM.

976 **Definition 9.3 (Interval of absolute stability)** The interval  $(Re(\hat{h}), 0)$ ,  $Re(\hat{h}) < 0$  for which  
 977 the LMM is absolutely stable is called the interval of absolute stability of the LMM.

978 The interval of absolute stability is given by the intersection of the region of absolute stability with  
 979 the negative real  $\hat{h}$ -axis.

980 **Example 9.5 (Region and interval of absolute stability of the Euler method)** What is the  
 981 region and interval of absolute stability of the Euler method? To answer the question we apply the  
 982 Euler method to the homogeneous equation (293):

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \hat{h}x_n, \quad \hat{h} := \lambda h. \quad (297)$$

983 The stability polynomial for (297) is given by

$$p(r) = r - (1 + \hat{h}). \quad (298)$$

984 It has one root  $r = 1 + \hat{h}$ . Hence, the region of absolute stability is an open disk  $|1 + \hat{h}| < 1$  of  
 985 radius 1 centered at  $\hat{h} = -1$ .

986 To find the interval of absolute stability we have to solve the inequality  $|1 + \hat{h}| < 1$ . The solution  
 987 is given by  $\hat{h} \in (-2, 0)$ . Pay attention that this is the interval of absolute stability for any  $\lambda$ . For  
 988 a given equation, one has to compute  $h$  which satisfies the interval of absolute stability. As an  
 989 illustration, let us consider the equation  $x' = -8x$  and find  $h$  which satisfies the interval of absolute  
 990 stability  $-2 < \hat{h} < 0$ . Since  $\lambda = -8$  and  $\hat{h} = \lambda h$  we have  $-2 < -8h < 0 \Rightarrow h < 1/4$ . This  
 991 means that for  $h < 1/4$  the numerical solution given by the Euler method tends to zero as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ .  
 992 And this is exactly the reason for why the Forward Euler method for problem (286) with  $h = 0.25$   
 993 diverges (see the example above). If  $h < 1/4$  (let it be  $h = 0.24$ ) the method starts to converge to  
 the exact solution (Figure 5). ▲

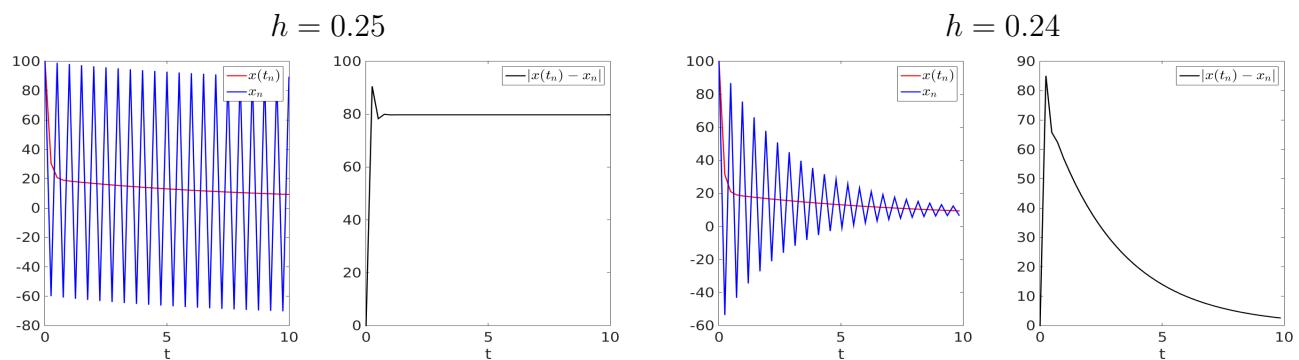


Figure 5: Shown is the exact,  $x(t_n)$ , and numerical,  $x_n$ , solutions to (286) computed with the Forward Euler method with different time steps, and the evolution of the global error  $|x(t_n) - x_n|$ .

994

**Example 9.6 (Region and interval of absolute stability of the Trapezoidal rule)** In order to  
 995 find the region and interval of absolute stability of the Trapezoidal rule

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{2}(f_{n+1} + f_n)$$

we have to apply it to the equation  $x' = \lambda x$ :

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}(x_{n+1} + x_n), \quad \hat{h} := \lambda h. \quad (299)$$

996 The stability polynomial for (299) is given by

$$p(r) = r - 1 - \frac{\hat{h}}{2}(r + 1). \quad (300)$$

997 It has single root  $r = \frac{1 + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}}{1 - \frac{\hat{h}}{2}}$ . Hence, the region of absolute stability is the entire left-half complex  
 998  $\hat{h}$ -plane, and therefore the interval of absolute stability is  $\hat{h} \in (-\infty, 0)$ . It means that the time  
 999 step can be chosen on grounds of accuracy with no regard to stability. Take a look at how the  
 1000 Trapezoidal rule works for (286):

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{2}(-8x_{n+1} + 40(3e^{-t_{n+1}/8} + 1) - 8x_n + 40(3e^{-t_n/8} + 1)). \quad (301)$$

1001 The results are shown in Figure 6. Even for a large time step  $h = 1$  the error decreases very quickly.

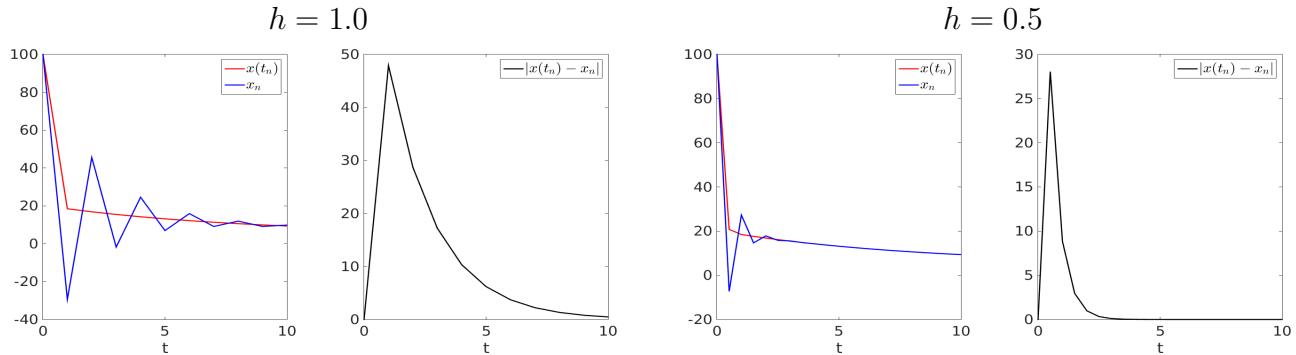


Figure 6: Shown is the exact,  $x(t_n)$ , and numerical,  $x_n$ , solutions to (286) computed with the Trapezoidal rule with different time steps, and the evolution of the global error  $|x(t_n) - x_n|$ .

1002

1003 **Definition 9.4 (A-stability)** A numerical method is said to be A-stable if its region of absolute  
 1004 stability includes the entire left-half complex  $\hat{h}$ -plane.

1005 For example, the Trapezoidal rule is an A-stable method.

1006 It is instructive to know the second Dahlquist barrier theorem when developing new LMMs.

### 1008 Theorem 9.1 (The second Dahlquist barrier)

- 1009 • There is no A-stable explicit LMM.
- 1010 • An A-stable implicit LMM cannot be of order  $p > 2$ .
- 1011 • The order-two A-stable LMM with the scaled error constant of smallest magnitude is the  
 1012 Trapezoidal rule.

## 1013 Lecture 10 The Boundary Locus Method and Absolute Stability for systems

### 1014 10.1 The Boundary Locus Method

1015 In general, determining the region of absolute stability of an s-step LMM is not a trivial task, since  
 1016 one has to find the set of all  $\hat{h}$  for which the stability polynomial satisfies the strict root condition  
 1017 ( $|r_m|_{m \in [1,s]} < 1$ ). Instead, it is much more helpful to find the boundary of the region of absolute  
 1018 stability and then check whether  $\hat{h}$  from a particular domain within the region of absolute stability  
 1019 satisfies the strict root condition. The Boundary Locus Method is the method for determining the  
 1020 stability region of s-step LMMs.

1021 How to find this boundary? The strict root condition is a set of all roots of the stability polynomial  
 1022 which  $|r| < 1$ . The roots of the stability polynomial on the boundary satisfy the equation  $|r| = 1$ .  
 1023 The solution of this equation is  $r = e^{is}$ , where  $i = \sqrt{-1}$  and  $s \in [0, 2\pi)$ . Thus, to find the boundary  
 1024 of the region of absolute stability one has to plug  $r = e^{is}$  into the stability polynomial and solve it  
 1025 for  $\hat{h} = \hat{h}(s)$ . By varying  $s$ , we can plot a closed curve in the complex  $\hat{h}$ -plane. This curve divides  
 1026 the plane into different subregions some of which (where  $\hat{h}$  such that  $|r| < 1$ ) form the region of  
 1027 absolute stability.

1028 **Example 10.1 (Region and interval of absolute stability)** In this example, we are aiming at  
 1029 using the Boundary Locus Method to find the region and interval of absolute stability for the 2-step  
 1030 LMM

$$x_{n+2} = x_{n+1} + h f_n. \quad (302)$$

1031 First, we have to find the stability polynomial. It is given by

$$p(r) = r^2 - r - \hat{h}, \quad (303)$$

1032 with the roots being  $r_{1,2} = \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{1 + 4\hat{h}}}{2}$ . Substitution of  $r = e^{is}$  into (303) leads to

$$e^{2is} - e^{is} - \hat{h} = 0 \Rightarrow \hat{h} = e^{2is} - e^{is}, \quad s \in [0, 2\pi). \quad (304)$$

The plot of  $\hat{h}(s)$  is presented in Figure 7

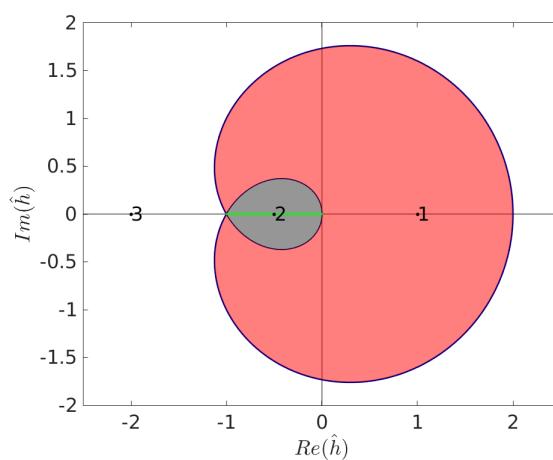


Figure 7: Shown is the locus of points for which the stability polynomial has the root  $|r| = 1$ . The region of absolute stability is shown in grey, and the interval of absolute stability is given by the solid green line.

1033 The locus of points for which  $|r| = 1$  divides the plane into three subdomains: grey, red, and white.  
 1034 The question is which of these regions is the region of absolute stability. In order to figure that out,  
 1035 we take one value of  $\hat{h}$  in each subregion marked by 1, 2, and 3 in Figure 7, plug them into the

1037 stability polynomial and compute the roots. If the roots for a particular value of  $\hat{h}$  satisfy the strict  
 1038 root condition then this subregion is the region of absolute stability. For  $\hat{h}_1 = 1$  (red region) and  
 1039  $\hat{h}_3 = -2$  (white region), the roots of stability polynomial  $|r_{1,2}| > 1$ , i.e. the strict root condition is  
 1040 violated. For  $\hat{h}_2 = -1/2$  the roots are  $|r_{1,2}| = 1/\sqrt{2}$ , and therefore satisfy the strict root condition.  
 1041 Thus, the grey region is the region of absolute stability, and its intersection with the left-half plane  
 1042 gives the interval of absolute stability  $(-1, 0)$  marked by the solid green line in Figure 7.

1043 In this particular example, the roots of the stability polynomial are not that complicated, and the  
 1044 interval of absolute stability can be computed by solving the inequality  $|r_{1,2}| < 1$  for  $\hat{h}$ . However,  
 1045 in more complicated cases, like in the next example, the Boundary Locus Method is the method of  
 1046 choice. ▲

1047 **Example 10.2 (Region and interval of absolute stability)** Let us consider a 3-step LMM given  
 1048 by

$$x_{n+3} = x_{n+2} + \frac{h}{12}(5f(t_{n+3}, x_{n+2} + \frac{h}{12}(23f_{n+2} - 16f_{n+1} + 5f_n)) + 8f_{n+2} - f_{n+1}). \quad (305)$$

1049 When applied to the ODE  $x' = \lambda x$ , it gives

$$x_{n+3} = (1 + \frac{13}{12}\hat{h} + \frac{115}{144}\hat{h}^2)x_{n+2} - (\frac{\hat{h}}{12} + \frac{5}{9}\hat{h}^2)x_{n+1} + \frac{25}{144}\hat{h}^2x_n. \quad (306)$$

1050 The stability polynomial is then

$$p(r) = r^3 - (1 + \frac{13}{12}\hat{h} + \frac{115}{144}\hat{h}^2)r^2 + (\frac{\hat{h}}{12} + \frac{5}{9}\hat{h}^2)r - \frac{25}{144}\hat{h}^2. \quad (307)$$

1051 One can find those  $\hat{h}$  that satisfy the root condition for  $p(r)$  by solving three inequalities  $|r_i| < 1$ ,  
 1052  $i = 1, 2, 3$ . It is not a trivial task. An easier and faster way is to apply the Boundary Locus Method.  
 1053 For doing so, we solve (307) for  $\hat{h}$ :

$$\hat{h}_{1,2} = \frac{(156r^2 - 12r) \pm 12r\sqrt{460r^3 - 611r^2 + 394r - 99}}{160r - 230r^2 - 50} \quad (308)$$

1054 and substitute  $r = e^{is}$  into (308):

$$\hat{h}_{1,2} = \frac{(156e^{2is} - 12e^{is}) \pm 12e^{is}\sqrt{460e^{3is} - 611e^{2is} + 394e^{is} - 99}}{160e^{is} - 230e^{2is} - 50}. \quad (309)$$

1055 Now, we can plot the roots  $\hat{h}_1$  and  $\hat{h}_2$ :

1056 It is worth noting that in order to find the region of absolute stability one should find the roots of  
 1057 the stability polynomial,  $p(r)$ , substitute  $\hat{h}$ 's from different regions of the domain into each root and  
 1058 check whether the roots satisfy the strict root condition. ▲

## 10.2 Absolute Stability for systems

1060 Let us consider a system of ODEs

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(t_0) = \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N], \quad (310)$$

1061 where  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^m$ ,  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ , with  $\mathbf{A}$  being a matrix of constant coefficients. In order to study  
 1062 absolute stability for systems of ODEs the matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  has to be diagonalized. It is diagonalizable if it  
 1063 has  $m$  linearly independent eigenvectors  $\{\mathbf{v}_i\}_{i \in [1, m]}$  with the corresponding eigenvalues  $\{\lambda_i\}_{i \in [1, m]}$ .

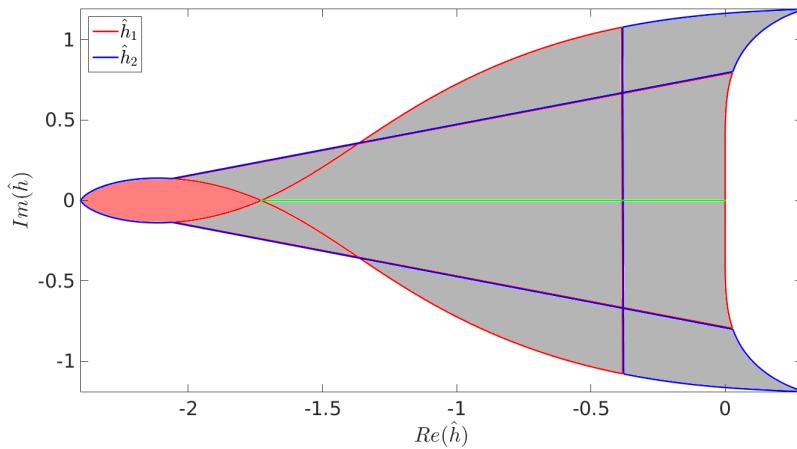


Figure 8: Shown is the locus of points for which the stability polynomial has the root  $|r| = 1$ . The region of absolute stability is shaded in grey, and the interval of absolute stability is given by the solid green line.

1064 In this case, there exists a nonsingular matrix  $\mathbf{V}$  with columns  $\{\mathbf{v}_i\}_{i \in [1, m]}$  such that

$$\mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{A} \mathbf{V} = \Lambda, \quad (311)$$

1065 where  $\Lambda$  is a diagonal matrix of eigenvalues.

1066 Let us define  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{V}\mathbf{y}$  and substitute it into (310)

$$\mathbf{V}\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{y}. \quad (312)$$

1067 Multiplying it by  $\mathbf{V}^{-1}$  from the left we have

$$\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{A} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{y}, \quad (313)$$

1068 or

$$\mathbf{y}' = \Lambda \mathbf{y}. \quad (314)$$

1069 Thus, the solution of system (310) reduced to the solution of a set of uncoupled scalar ODEs (314)  
1070 of the type ( $y'_i = \lambda_i y_i, i \in [1, m]$ ) which we have studied before. As long as  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$  are connected  
1071 through a linear transformation, they have the same long-time behaviour.

1072 **Definition 10.1 (Absolute stability for systems of ODEs)** An LMM is said to be absolutely  
1073 stable for a diagonalizable system of ODEs  $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$  ( $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^m$ ,  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ , and all eigenvalues  
1074  $\text{Re}(\lambda_i) < 0, i \in [1, m]$ ) if the numerical solution  $\mathbf{x}_n \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  for any choice of starting  
1075 values.

1076 **Example 10.3 (The interval of absolute stability for a system of ODEs)** Consider the sys-  
1077 tem of ODEs

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -2 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(t_0) = \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (315)$$

1078 The eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{A}$  are given by  $\Lambda_{1,2} = \{-1, -2\}$ . To find the interval of absolute stability, we  
1079 have to choose a method to solve the system. Let it be the Euler method:

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+1} = \mathbf{x}_n + h \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}_n. \quad (316)$$

1080 We know that the interval of absolute stability for the Euler method is  $\hat{h} \in (-2, 0)$ . For the system  
1081 of equations, we have to find the smallest interval of absolute stability to ensure the method is

1082 absolutely stable. In this particular case, we have two intervals (since the system is of order 2): the  
 1083 one for  $\lambda_1 = -1$  is  $h \in (0, 2)$  and the other for  $\lambda_2 = -2$  is  $h \in (0, 1)$ . Hence, the smallest one is  
 1084  $h \in (0, 1)$ . Only if the time step is taken from the smallest interval the method will be absolutely  
 1085 stable, otherwise the method will suffer from an instability like the one we observed when studied  
 1086 scalar ODEs.

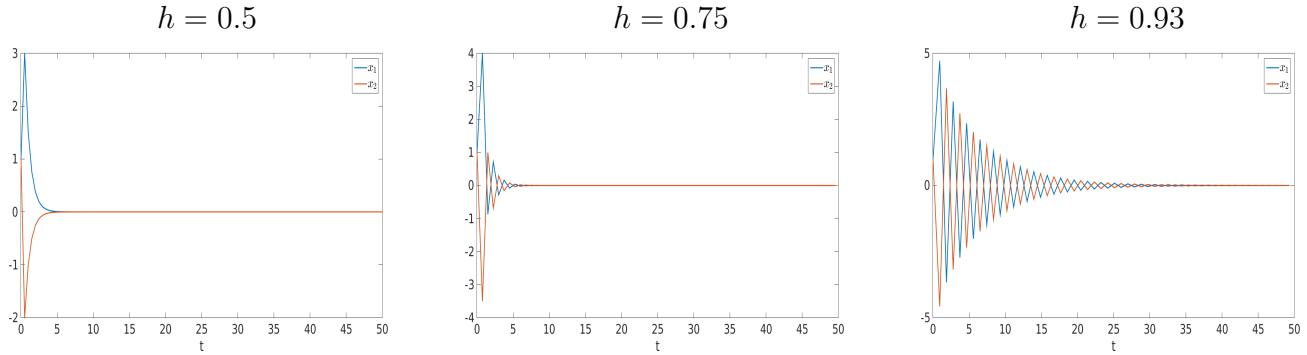


Figure 9: Shown is the numerical solution  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2)$  computed with the Euler method with different time steps vs time.

1087 Note that the closer the time step to the border of the region of absolute stability is, the more  
 1088 time it takes for the solution to get to zero. For example, the time step  $h = 0.5$  is in the middle of  
 1089 the interval of absolute stability and therefore the method converges to zero quite rapidly, while for  
 1090 the time step much closer to the border,  $h = 0.93$ , it takes more time for the method to converge.  
 1091  $\blacktriangleleft$

## 1092 Lecture 11 Implicit LMMs and nonlinear equations

1093 Our previous study and experience with developing numerical methods shows that implicit methods  
 1094 usually allow to chose the time step based on grounds of accuracy rather than stability. However,  
 1095 it does not come for free, especially for nonlinear systems of ODEs, since, in this case a system of  
 1096 nonlinear algebraic equations has to be solved at each time step to find the numerical solution.

1097 Let us consider the general s-step implicit LMM

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m x_{n+m} = h \sum_{m=0}^s \beta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \quad , \text{ where } \alpha_m, \beta_m = \text{const} \in \mathbb{R}, \text{ and } \alpha_s = 1 \quad (317)$$

1098 with  $\beta_s \neq 0$ . The condition  $\beta_s \neq 0$  makes the method implicit (the right hand side depends on the  
 1099 solution  $x_{n+s}$ ). We can rewrite (317) in the following form

$$x_{n+s} = h\beta_s f(t_{n+s}, x_{n+s}) + g_n, \quad g_n := h \sum_{m=0}^{s-1} \beta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}) - \sum_{m=0}^{s-1} \alpha_m x_{n+m}, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (318)$$

1100 There are many numerical methods which can be used to solve nonlinear systems. In this course  
 1101 we will consider the following three:

- 1102 • Fixed Point Iteration method
- 1103 • The Newton method (also called Newton-Raphson method)
- 1104 • Predictor-Corrector methods

### 1105 11.1 Fixed Point Iteration method

1106 The idea behind the Fixed Point Iteration method is to take a nonlinear equation, or a system of  
 1107 nonlinear equations, (in our case it is equation (318)), choose an initial guess  $x_{n+s}^0$ , and iterate the  
 1108 equation

$$x_{n+s}^{i+1} = h\beta_s f(t_{n+s}, x_{n+s}^i) + g_n. \quad (319)$$

1109 until convergence or  $i = M$ ;  $i$  is the iteration number, and  $M$  is the maximum number of iterations.  
 1110 As a stopping criterion, one can take, say  $\|x_{n+s}^{i+1} - x_{n+s}^i\|_2 / \|x_{n+s}^{i+1}\|_2 < \epsilon$ , where  $\epsilon$  is a given  
 1111 tolerance. Typically, the Fixed Point Iteration method requires very small time steps to converge  
 1112 and convergence is slow. This may be seen as a drawback of the method. On the other hand, it is  
 1113 easy and straightforward to implement.

1114 **Example 11.1 (Backward Euler method and Fixed Point Iteration)** As an example of use of  
 1115 the Fixed Point Iteration method, let us consider the nonlinear initial value problem

$$x' = 2x(1 - x)t, \quad x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (320)$$

1116 As a numerical method, let us take the Backward Euler method ( $x_{n+1} = x_n + h f_{n+1}$ ):

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h 2x_{n+1}(1 - x_{n+1})t_{n+1}. \quad (321)$$

1117 Then, the Fixed Point Iteration for (321) is given by

$$x_{n+1}^{i+1} = x_n + h 2x_{n+1}^i(1 - x_{n+1}^i)t_{n+1}, \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, M. \quad (322)$$

1118 Note that equation (322) has to be solved at each time step. ▲



## 11.2 The Newton method

The Newton method for a nonlinear equation

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{x}) = 0$$

is given by

$$\mathbf{x}^{i+1} = \mathbf{x}^i - (\mathbf{F}'(\mathbf{x}^i))^{-1} \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{x}^i), \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, M, \quad (323)$$

where  $\mathbf{F}'$  is the Jacobian of  $\mathbf{F}$ , and  $i$  is the iteration number, and  $M$  is the maximum number of iterations. The Newton method has a quadratic converge rate provided that the initial guess  $x^0$  is sufficiently close to the root. However, it requires a Jacobian of the function and a system of linear equation to be solved for each iteration step.

The Newton method for the nonlinear equation (318) reads

$$x_{n+s}^{i+1} = x_{n+s}^i - (\mathbf{F}'(x_{n+s}^i))^{-1} \mathbf{F}(x_{n+s}^i), \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, , \quad (324)$$

where

$$\mathbf{F}(x_{n+s}^i) = x_{n+s}^i - (h\beta_s f(t_{n+s}, x_{n+s}^i) + g_n)$$

and

$$g_n := h \sum_{m=0}^{s-1} \beta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}) - \sum_{m=0}^{s-1} \alpha_m x_{n+m}, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

The stopping criterion for the Newton method is the same as for the Fixed Point Iteration.

**Example 11.2 (Backward-Euler and Newton’s methods for a system of ODEs)** Let us consider the following nonlinear system of ODEs:

$$\begin{cases} x' = -2y^3, \\ y' = 2x - y^4, \end{cases} \quad x(0) = y(0) = 1. \quad (325)$$

The Backward-Euler method is given by

$$\begin{cases} x_{n+1} = x_n - h2y_{n+1}^3, \\ y_{n+1} = y_n + h(2x_{n+1} - y_{n+1}^4), \end{cases} \quad (326)$$

$$\mathbf{F} \begin{pmatrix} x_{n+1} \\ y_{n+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_{n+1} - (x_n - h2y_{n+1}^3) \\ y_{n+1} - (y_n + h(2x_{n+1} - y_{n+1}^4)) \end{pmatrix} \quad (327)$$

with the Jacobian

$$\mathbf{F}' \begin{pmatrix} x_{n+1} \\ y_{n+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 6hy_{n+1}^2 \\ -2h & 1 + 4hy_{n+1}^3 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (328)$$

Hence, the Newton method for (325) is:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_{n+1}^{i+1} \\ y_{n+1}^{i+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_{n+1}^i \\ y_{n+1}^i \end{pmatrix} - \mathbf{F}' \begin{pmatrix} x_{n+1}^i \\ y_{n+1}^i \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \mathbf{F} \begin{pmatrix} x_{n+1}^i \\ y_{n+1}^i \end{pmatrix}, \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, M. \quad (329)$$

Notice that the system of equations (329) has to be solved at each time step. ▲

## 11.3 Predictor-corrector methods

The basic principle underlying predictor-corrector methods is to predict the numerical solution with the predictor, and then correct it with the corrector. There different types of predictor-corrector

method, in this course we consider two types:  $P(EC)^kE$  (Predict Evaluate Correct Evaluate) and  $P(EC)^k$  (Predict Evaluate Correct);  $k$  is an non-negative integer. As a predictor and corrector we will use the method studied in the course.

### 11.3.1 $P(EC)^kE$ (Predict Evaluate Correct Evaluate)

For the  $P(EC)^kE$  method, we use an s-step explicit LMM as a predictor:

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \alpha_m x_{n+m} = h \sum_{m=0}^{s-1} \beta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}), \quad (330)$$

and an s-step implicit LMM as a corrector

$$\sum_{m=0}^s \gamma_m x_{n+m} = h \sum_{m=0}^s \delta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}), \quad \delta_s \neq 0. \quad (331)$$

Combining (330) and (331) into the  $P(EC)^kE$  method gives

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Predict} \quad x_{n+s}^0 &= - \sum_{m=0}^{s-1} \alpha_m x_{n+m}^k + h \sum_{m=0}^{s-1} \beta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}^k) \\ \left( \begin{array}{l} \text{Evaluate} \quad f^i(t_{n+s}, x_{n+s}^i) \\ \text{Correct} \quad x_{n+s}^{i+1} = - \sum_{m=0}^{s-1} \gamma_m x_{n+m}^k + h(\delta_s f^i(t_{n+s}, x_{n+s}^i) + \sum_{m=0}^{s-1} \delta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}^k)) \end{array} \right)_{i=0,1,2,\dots,k-1} \\ \text{Evaluate} \quad f(t_{n+s}, x_{n+s}^k) \end{aligned} \quad (332)$$

where  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$

### 11.3.2 $P(EC)^k$ (Predict Evaluate Correct)

For the  $P(EC)^k$  method, we use the same predictor and corrector as for  $P(EC)^kE$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Predict} \quad x_{n+s}^0 &= - \sum_{m=0}^{s-1} \alpha_m x_{n+m}^k + h \sum_{m=0}^{s-1} \beta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}^{k-1}) \\ \left( \begin{array}{l} \text{Evaluate} \quad f^i(t_{n+s}, x_{n+s}^i) \\ \text{Correct} \quad x_{n+s}^{i+1} = - \sum_{m=0}^{s-1} \gamma_m x_{n+m}^k + h(\delta_s f^i(t_{n+s}, x_{n+s}^i) + \sum_{m=0}^{s-1} \delta_m f(t_{n+m}, x_{n+m}^{k-1})) \end{array} \right)_{i=0,1,2,\dots,k-1} \end{aligned} \quad (333)$$

where  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$

1148

The local truncation error, the global error, the region and interval of absolute stability for predictor-corrector methods can be calculated in the same way as for the methods considered in the course. To make it clearer we will address all this in the series of examples below. As an example of predictor-corrector methods, we consider two methods based on explicit/implicit methods of the same order of accuracy.

**Example 11.3 (Forward-Backward Euler method as PECE)** In this example, we consider the

*Forward-Backward Euler method, with the Forward Euler method*

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + hf_n$$

*being the predictor, and the Backward Euler method*

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + hf_{n+1}$$

1154 *being the corrector. Then, the PECE method based on the Forward-Backward Euler pair is given  
1155 by*

$$\begin{aligned} \textbf{Predict} \quad & \hat{x}_{n+1} = x_n + hf(t_n, x_n) \\ \textbf{Evaluate} \quad & f(t_{n+1}, \hat{x}_{n+1}) \\ \textbf{Correct} \quad & x_{n+1} = x_n + hf(t_{n+1}, \hat{x}_{n+1}) \\ \textbf{Evaluate} \quad & f(t_{n+1}, x_{n+1}) \end{aligned} \tag{334}$$

1156 where  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$

1157

### The local truncation error

*Another question we will study in this example is how to compute the local truncation error of the predictor-corrector method. For this, we take the continuous form of the predictor*

$$\hat{x}(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + hf(t_n, x(t_n))$$

1158 and use the difference equation  $x' = f(t, x)$  to replace the term  $f(t_n, x(t_n))$ :

$$\hat{x}(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + hx'(t_n). \tag{335}$$

*Then, we take the continuous form of the corrector*

$$x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + hf(t_{n+1}, \hat{x}(t_{n+1}))$$

1159 and replace  $f(t_{n+1}, \hat{x}(t_{n+1}))$  with its derivative  $\hat{x}'(t_{n+1})$ :

$$x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + h\hat{x}'(t_{n+1}). \tag{336}$$

1160 Finally, we plug (335) into (336) to get

$$\begin{aligned} x(t_{n+1}) &= x(t_n) + h(x'(t_n) + hx''(t_n)) \\ &= x(t_n) + hx'(t_n) + h^2x''(t_n). \end{aligned} \tag{337}$$

*The last step is to calculate the difference between the Taylor expansion of the exact solution:*

$$x(t+h) = x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t) + \mathcal{O}(h^3)$$

*and its approximation given by (337):*

$$x(t+h) - x(t_{n+1}) = \mathcal{O}(h^2).$$

1161 This gives the local truncation error of order 2.

1162

### The global error and convergence

1163 We can prove that the method is convergent in the same way as we did for the Euler method. Can

1165 **you do it?**

1166

### 1167 The region and interval of absolute stability

1168 The region and interval of absolute stability can be computed by applying the PECE method to the  
1169 equation  $x' = \lambda x$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{x}_{n+1} &= x_n + \hat{h}x_n, \\ x_{n+1} &= x_n + h f(t_{n+1}, \hat{x}_{n+1}) = x_n + \hat{h}x_n + \hat{h}^2 x_n.\end{aligned}\tag{338}$$

1170 The stability polynomial for the PECE is

$$p(r) = r - (1 + \hat{h} + \hat{h}^2).\tag{339}$$

1171 Using the Boundary Locus method we compute the region of absolute stability and present the results in Figure 10.

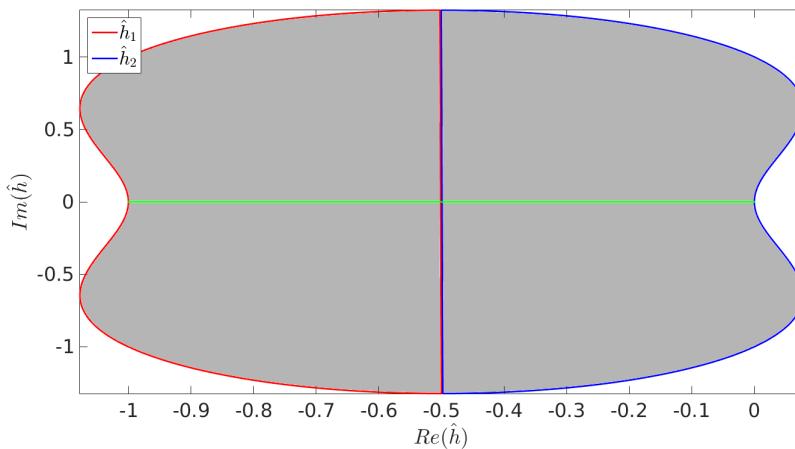


Figure 10: The region of absolute stability is shown in grey, and the interval of absolute stability is given by the solid green line.

1172

1173 The interval of absolute stability is  $\hat{h} \in (-1, 0)$ . ▲

**Example 11.4 (AB(2)-Trapezoidal rule as PECE)** In this example, we use the AB(2) method

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{2}(3f_n - f_{n-1})$$

as a predictor and the Trapezoidal rule

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h}{2}(f_{n+1} + f_n)$$

1174 as a corrector, which gives the following PECE method:

$$\begin{aligned}\textbf{Predict} \quad \hat{x}_{n+1} &= x_n + \frac{h}{2}(3f(t_n, x_n) - f(t_{n-1}, x_{n-1})) \\ \textbf{Evaluate} \quad f(t_{n+1}, \hat{x}_{n+1}) \\ \textbf{Correct} \quad x_{n+1} &= x_n + \frac{h}{2}(f(t_{n+1}, \hat{x}_{n+1}) + f(t_n, x_n)) \\ \textbf{Evaluate} \quad f(t_{n+1}, x_{n+1})\end{aligned}\tag{340}$$

1175 where  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$

1176

### The local truncation error

In order to compute the local truncation error of the PECE method, we follow the same steps as in the previous example. Namely, we rewrite the predictor as

$$\hat{x}(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + \frac{h}{2}(3f(t_n, x(t_n)) - f(t_{n-1}, x(t_{n-1})))$$

<sub>1177</sub> and use the difference equation  $x' = f(t, x)$  to replace  $f$ :

$$\hat{x}(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + \frac{h}{2}(3x'(t_n) - x'(t_{n-1})). \quad (341)$$

Then, we take the continuous form of the corrector

$$x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + \frac{h}{2}(f(t_{n+1}, \hat{x}(t_{n+1})) + f(t_n, x(t_n)))$$

<sub>1178</sub> and replace  $f(t_{n+1}, \hat{x}(t_{n+1}))$  with  $\hat{x}'(t_{n+1})$  and  $f(t_n, x(t_n))$  with  $x'(t_n)$ :

$$x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + \frac{h}{2}(\hat{x}'(t_{n+1}) + x'(t_n)). \quad (342)$$

<sub>1179</sub> Substitution of (341) into (342) leads to

$$\begin{aligned} x(t_{n+1}) &= x(t_n) + \frac{h}{2}(x'(t_n) + \frac{h}{2}(3x''(t_n) - x''(t_{n-1})) + x'(t_n)) \\ &\quad \text{using the Taylor expansion of } x''(t_{n-1}) = x''(t_n) - hx'''(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}x'''' + \mathcal{O}(h^3) \text{ gives:} \\ &= x(t_n) + hx'(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t_n) + \frac{h^3}{4}x'''(t_n) + \mathcal{O}(h^4). \end{aligned} \quad (343)$$

We can now calculate the difference between the Taylor expansion of the exact solution and its approximation given by (343):

$$x(t+h) - x(t_{n+1}) = \mathcal{O}(h^3).$$

<sub>1180</sub> Thus, the local truncation error of order 3.

<sub>1181</sub>

### The global error and convergence

<sub>1183</sub> We can prove that the method is convergent in the same way as we did for the Euler method. **Can you do it?**

<sub>1185</sub>

### The region and interval of absolute stability

<sub>1187</sub> The region and interval of absolute stability can be computed by applying the PECE method to the equation  $x' = \lambda x$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{x}_{n+1} &= x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}(3x_n - x_{n-1}), \\ x_{n+1} &= x_n + \frac{h}{2}(f(t_{n+1}, \hat{x}_{n+1}) + f(t_n, x_n)) \\ &= x_n + \hat{h}x_n + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{4}(3x_n - x_{n-1}). \end{aligned} \quad (344)$$

<sup>1189</sup> Shifting the indices to the right gives

$$x_{n+2} = x_{n+1} + \hat{h}x_{n+1} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{4}(3x_{n+1} - x_n). \quad (345)$$

<sup>1190</sup> Thus, the stability polynomial for the PECE is

$$p(r) = r^2 - (1 + \hat{h} + \frac{3\hat{h}^2}{4})r + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{4}. \quad (346)$$

<sup>1191</sup> We use the Boundary Locus method to compute the region and interval of absolute stability (Figure 11).

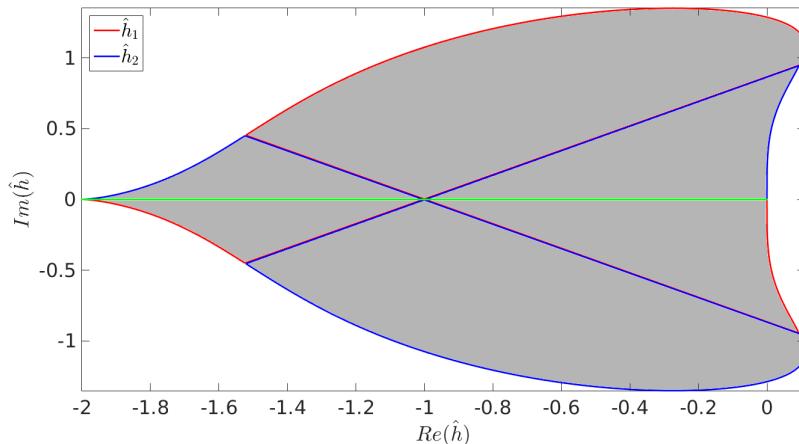


Figure 11: The region of absolute stability is shown in grey, and the interval of absolute stability is given by the solid green line.

<sup>1192</sup>

<sup>1193</sup> The interval of absolute stability is  $\hat{h} \in (-2, 0)$ . ▲

<sup>1194</sup> As you probably have noticed from the examples, the interval of absolute stability of predictor-  
<sup>1195</sup> corrector methods is closer to that of the predictor. Sometimes, like in the examples above, the  
<sup>1196</sup> interval of absolute stability of the corrector can be significantly shrunk. For instance, the Trapezoidal  
<sup>1197</sup> rule is an A-stable method (i.e., the time steps can be chosen based on accuracy not stability), while  
<sup>1198</sup> the interval of absolute stability of the AB(2) method is  $\hat{h} \in (-1, 0)$ . However, the interval of  
<sup>1199</sup> absolute stability of the PECE method is only  $\hat{h} \in (-2, 0)$ .

## 1200 Lecture 12 Improved approximations

1201 Let us think about how to improve the accuracy of predictor-corrector methods. An obvious idea is  
 1202 to decrease the time step. But, in this case the method will take more time to compute the solution.  
 1203 Another idea is to use higher-order methods for the predictor-corrector. This will take some extra  
 1204 work to implement new higher-order methods, but it will definitely pay off in the long run. A less  
 1205 trivial approach is to manipulate the local truncation error of both the predictor and corrector in  
 1206 such a way that the accuracy of the predictor-corrector pair is higher. This approach is known as  
 1207 the Milne estimator or Milne’s device.

### 1208 12.1 The Milne estimator

1209 Let us assume we have to develop a predictor-corrector method using a pair of s-step LMMs of order  
 1210  $\mathcal{O}(h^{p+1})$  as a predictor and corrector. Then, the difference

$$x(t_{n+s}) - \hat{x}_{n+s} = h^{p+1} \hat{C}_{p+1} \frac{d^{p+1}x}{dt^{p+1}} + \mathcal{O}(h^{p+2}) \quad (347)$$

1211 is the error of the predictor, and the difference

$$x(t_{n+s}) - x_{n+s} = h^{p+1} C_{p+1} \frac{d^{p+1}x}{dt^{p+1}} + \mathcal{O}(h^{p+2}) \quad (348)$$

1212 is the error of the corrector. Here,  $x(t_{n+s})$  is the exact solution,  $\hat{x}_{n+s}$  and  $x_{n+s}$  are the numerical  
 1213 solutions computed with the predictor and the corrector, respectively, and  $\hat{C}_{p+1}$  and  $C_{p+1}$  are error  
 1214 constants.

1215 Ignoring  $\mathcal{O}(h^{p+2})$  and subtracting (348) from (347) we obtain

$$x_{n+s} - \hat{x}_{n+s} = h^{p+1} (\hat{C}_{p+1} - C_{p+1}) \frac{d^{p+1}x}{dt^{p+1}}. \quad (349)$$

1216 Multiplication of (349) by  $\frac{C_{p+1}}{\hat{C}_{p+1} - C_{p+1}}$  gives

$$\frac{C_{p+1}}{\hat{C}_{p+1} - C_{p+1}} (x_{n+s} - \hat{x}_{n+s}) = h^{p+1} C_{p+1} \frac{d^{p+1}x}{dt^{p+1}}. \quad (350)$$

1217 The right hand side of (350) is the local truncation error of the corrector. Thus, we have an  
 1218 estimation of the leading order error in the corrector. This is known as **the Milne estimator**.

1219 Using (350) in (348) results in

$$x(t_{n+s}) - x_{n+s} = \frac{C_{p+1}}{\hat{C}_{p+1} - C_{p+1}} (x_{n+s} - \hat{x}_{n+s}) + \mathcal{O}(h^{p+2}) \quad (351)$$

1220 or

$$x(t_{n+s}) - \tilde{x}_{n+s} = \mathcal{O}(h^{p+2}), \quad \tilde{x}_{n+s} := x_{n+s} + \frac{C_{p+1}}{\hat{C}_{p+1} - C_{p+1}} (x_{n+s} - \hat{x}_{n+s}). \quad (352)$$

1221 The new solution of the corrector,  $\tilde{x}_{n+s}$ , is one order more accurate than the old one  $x_{n+s}$ . Thus,  
 1222 to increase the accuracy by an order of magnitude, one has to only know the error constants of the  
 1223 predictor and corrector. Obviously, it is way easier than developing higher-order methods. Note that  
 1224 the Milne estimator can be used for methods with the same order of the local truncation error.

1225 **Example 12.1 (The Milne estimator for the Forward-Backward Euler PECE method)** Let

<sup>1226</sup> us consider the PECE method based on the Forward-Backward Euler pair.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \textbf{Predict} \quad & \hat{x}_{n+1} = x_n + h f(t_n, x_n) \\
 \textbf{Evaluate} \quad & f(t_{n+1}, \hat{x}_{n+1}) \\
 \textbf{Correct} \quad & x_{n+1} = x_n + h f(t_{n+1}, \hat{x}_{n+1}) \\
 \textbf{Evaluate} \quad & f(t_{n+1}, x_{n+1})
 \end{aligned} \tag{353}$$

<sup>1227</sup> where  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$

<sup>1228</sup>

The error constant of the predictor and corrector can be computed from the local truncation error as follows:

$$x(t_{n+1}) - \hat{x}_{n+1} = h^2 \hat{C}_2 x''(t_n), \quad \hat{C}_2 := \frac{1}{2},$$

and

$$x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} = h^2 C_2 x''(t_n), \quad C_2 := -\frac{1}{2}.$$

The local truncation error of the predictor-corrector method in this form is  $\mathcal{O}(h^2)$  as we have shown it before. If we use the Milne estimator, then in accordance with (352) the new solution of the corrector becomes:

$$\tilde{x}_{n+1} := x_{n+1} - \frac{1}{2}(x_{n+1} - \hat{x}_{n+1}).$$

Therefore, the local truncation error of the new solution becomes

$$x(t_{n+1}) - \tilde{x}_{n+1} = \mathcal{O}(h^3).$$

<sup>1229</sup> As you can see, the Milne estimator is easy to implement. and more importantly, its computational complexity (the number of arithmetic operations) is negligible compared with the predictor-corrector method. ▲



## 1232 Lecture 13 Extrapolation

1233 Let us consider an initial value problem

$$x' = f(t, x), \quad x(0) = x_0, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (354)$$

1234 Let  $z(t, h)$  denote a numerical approximation of the exact solution  $x(t)$  of (354) at time  $t$  using  
1235 step size  $h$ . Suppose the global error of a numerical method has an expansion in powers of  $h$  of the  
1236 form

$$z(t, h) = x(t) + \sum_{i=1}^q c_i(t)h^i + O(h^{q+1}), \quad (355)$$

1237 with  $c_j(t) = 0$ ,  $j = 1, 2, \dots, p - 1$  for a method of order  $p < q$ .

1238 It is known that every explicit one-step method has such an expansion when  $x(t)$  is smooth.  
1239 Implicit Runge-Kutta methods may also have expansions of this form. The idea of extrapolation is to  
1240 combine solutions  $z(t, h_j)$  computed with different step sizes  $h_j$  with  $j = 0, 1, \dots$  so that successive  
1241 terms of the error expansion (355) are eliminated, thus, resulting in a higher-order approximation.

1242 Let us consider

$$z(t, h) = x(t) + c_1 h + c_2 h^2 + \dots \quad (356)$$

and compute two solutions at time  $t$  using time steps  $h_0$  and  $h_0/2$ , namely

$$z(t, h_0) = x(t) + c_1 h_0 + c_2 h_0^2 + \dots \quad (357a)$$

$$z\left(t, \frac{h_0}{2}\right) = x(t) + c_1 \frac{h_0}{2} + c_2 \frac{h_0^2}{4} + \dots \quad (357b)$$

1243 We have to find  $x(t)$  and  $c_1$  from system (357). Subtracting the second equation from the first one,  
1244 we eliminate  $x(t)$  and obtain

$$c_1 \frac{h_0}{2} = z(t, h_0) - z\left(t, \frac{h_0}{2}\right) - c_2 \frac{3}{4} h_0^2 + \dots \quad (358)$$

1245 Substituting (358) into, say, the second expansion yields

$$2z\left(t, \frac{h_0}{2}\right) - z(t, h_0) = x(t) - \frac{c_2}{2} h_0^2 + \dots \quad (359)$$

1246 Thus,  $2z(t, h_0/2) - z(t, h_0)$  provides a higher-order (namely,  $O(h^2)$ ) approximation of  $x(t)$  than  
1247 either  $z(t, h_0)$  or  $z(t, h_0/2)$ .

1248 The same results can be obtained by approximating  $z(t, h)$  by a linear polynomial  $R_1(t, h)$  that  
1249 interpolates  $z(t, h)$  between  $h = h_0$  and  $h = h_0/2$ :

$$\text{Richardson's extrapolation: } R_1(t, h) = \alpha_0(t) + \alpha_1(t)h. \quad (360)$$

1250 The extrapolation condition requires

$$z(t, h_0) = \alpha_0(t) + \alpha_1(t)h_0, \quad (361)$$

1251 and

$$z\left(t, \frac{h_0}{2}\right) = \alpha_0(t) + \alpha_1(t)\frac{h_0}{2}. \quad (362)$$

1252 Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha_1(t) &= \frac{2}{h_0} \left( z(t, h_0) - z\left(t, \frac{h_0}{2}\right) \right), \\ \alpha_0(t) &= 2z\left(t, \frac{h_0}{2}\right) - z(t, h_0), \\ R_1(t, 0) &= \alpha_0 = 2z\left(t, \frac{h_0}{2}\right) - z(t, h_0).\end{aligned}\tag{363}$$

1253 Richardson's extrapolation is called extrapolation, because we use old values  $z(t, h_0/2)$ ,  $z(t, h_0)$  to  
1254 obtain an extrapolated value at  $h \rightarrow 0$ .

**Example 13.1 (Euler method with Richardson's extrapolation)** Let us compute the local truncation error for the Euler method using Richardson's extrapolation. We write the Euler method in the continuous form, since we have to differentiate the right hand side and do some substitutions. The Euler method for  $x' = f(t, x)$  is given by

$$x(t + h) = x(t) + hf(t, x(t)) = x(t) + hx'(t) =: z(t, h).$$

In order to compute  $R_1(t, 0)$  in (363), we have to compute  $z(t, h/2)$  at the same moment as  $z(t, h)$ , i.e. at  $t + h$ . Since  $z(t, h/2)$  is the solution computed with step  $h/2$ , therefore we have to compute it twice to get it at time  $t + h$ . At time  $t + h/2$  we have

$$x(t + \frac{h}{2}) = x(t) + \frac{h}{2}x'(t).$$

1255 At time  $t + h$  we get

$$x(t + h) = x(t + \frac{h}{2}) + \frac{h}{2}x'(t + \frac{h}{2}).\tag{364}$$

1256 Upon substitution of  $x(t + h/2)$  and  $x'(t + h/2)$  into (364) we get

$$\begin{aligned}x(t + h) &= x(t) + \frac{h}{2}x'(t) + \frac{h}{2}(x'(t) + \frac{h}{2}x''(t)) \\ &= x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h^2}{4}x''(t) =: z(t, \frac{h}{2}).\end{aligned}\tag{365}$$

1257 We can now compute the new solution based on the Richardson extrapolation as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{x}(t + h) &= 2z(t, \frac{h}{2}) - z(t, h) \\ &= x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t).\end{aligned}\tag{366}$$

Thus, the local truncation error is given by

$$x(t_{n+1}) - \tilde{x}(t + h) = O(h^3),$$

1258 with  $x(t_{n+1})$  being the exact solution. As we can see, the Richardson extrapolation gives a more  
1259 accurate solution compared with the Euler method; the local truncation error of the Euler method  
1260 is of order 2. ▲

1261 In fact,  $z(t, h_0)$  can be not only the solution of an ODE, but also an approximated value of, say,  
1262 a derivative. For example, let us use Richardson's extrapolation to improve the accuracy of a finite  
1263 difference approximation of  $\sin(x)$  at point  $x = 1$ .

1264 Let us use the forward difference approximation of the derivative:

$$(\sin(x))'_x \approx \frac{\sin(x+h) - \sin(x)}{h} = z(x, h). \quad (367)$$

1265 For  $h = 0.5$  and  $h/2 = 0.25$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} z(x, h) &= \frac{\sin(1.5) - \sin(1)}{0.5} = 0.31205, \\ z(x, h/2) &= \frac{\sin(1.25) - \sin(1)}{0.25} = 0.43005. \end{aligned} \quad (368)$$

1266 If we compare these values with the exact value

$$(\sin(x))'_x|_{x=1} = \cos(x)|_{x=1} = 0.540302, \quad (369)$$

1267 we can see that neither of them is close enough to the exact derivative. However, if we use the 1268 Richardson extrapolation

$$R_1(t, 0) = 2z\left(t, \frac{h}{2}\right) - z(t, h) = 0.548061, \quad (370)$$

1269 the accuracy increases significantly.

1270 For a more accurate solution, one can compute the solution at three different time steps, say  $h$ , 1271  $h/2$ ,  $h/4$  and find  $x(t)$  from the third-order system

$$\begin{aligned} z(t, h) &= x(t) + c_1 h + c_2 h^2 + O(h^3), \\ z\left(t, \frac{h}{2}\right) &= x(t) + c_1 \frac{h}{2} + c_2 \left(\frac{h}{2}\right)^2 + O(h^3), \\ z\left(t, \frac{h}{4}\right) &= x(t) + c_1 \frac{h}{4} + c_2 \left(\frac{h}{4}\right)^2 + O(h^3). \end{aligned} \quad (371)$$

1272 Solving (371) for  $x(t)$ ,  $c_1$ , and  $c_2$  we have

$$x(t) = \frac{z(t, h)}{3} - 2z\left(t, \frac{h}{2}\right) + \frac{8}{3}z\left(t, \frac{h}{4}\right) + O(h^3). \quad (372)$$

1273 This gives the accuracy of order  $O(h^3)$ . Thus, if one computes  $z(t, h)$ ,  $z\left(t, \frac{h}{2}\right)$ ,  $z\left(t, \frac{h}{4}\right)$  with, say 1274 the Euler method, and then compute the numerical solution as

$$x(t) = \frac{z(t, h)}{3} - 2z\left(t, \frac{h}{2}\right) + \frac{8}{3}z\left(t, \frac{h}{4}\right), \quad (373)$$

1275 it will give the accuracy of order  $O(h^4)$ .

**Example 13.2 (Euler method of improved accuracy)** Let us compute the local truncation error of the Euler method using approximation (373). As above, we write the Euler method in the continuous form:

$$x(t+h) = x(t) + hf(t, x(t)) = x(t) + hx'(t) =: z(t, h).$$

<sub>1276</sub> Function  $z(t, h/2)$  at time  $t + h$  is given by

$$x(t+h) = x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h^2}{4}x''(t) =: z(t, \frac{h}{2}). \quad (374)$$

As with  $z(t, h/2)$ , function  $z(t, h/4)$  has to be computed at time  $t + h$  to be used in (373). Namely, at time  $t + h/4$  we have

$$x(t + \frac{h}{4}) = x(t) + \frac{h}{4}x'(t).$$

<sub>1277</sub> At time  $t + 2h/4$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} x(t + 2\frac{h}{4}) &= x(t + \frac{h}{4}) + \frac{h}{4}x'(t + \frac{h}{4}) \\ &\quad \text{Substitution of } x(t + \frac{h}{4}) \text{ and } x'(t + \frac{h}{4}) \text{ gives} \\ &= x(t) + \frac{h}{4}x'(t) + \frac{h}{4}(x'(t) + \frac{h}{4}x''(t)) \\ &= x(t) + \frac{h}{2}x'(t) + \frac{h^2}{16}x''(t). \end{aligned} \quad (375)$$

<sub>1278</sub> At time  $t + 3h/4$  we get

$$\begin{aligned} x(t + 3\frac{h}{4}) &= x(t + 2\frac{h}{4}) + \frac{h}{4}x'(t + 2\frac{h}{4}) \\ &= x(t) + \frac{3}{4}hx'(t) + \frac{3}{16}h^2x''(t) + \frac{h^3}{64}x'''(t). \end{aligned} \quad (376)$$

<sub>1279</sub> At time  $t + 4h/4$  we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} x(t + 4\frac{h}{4}) &= x(t + 3\frac{h}{4}) + \frac{h}{4}x'(t + 3\frac{h}{4}) \\ &= x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{6}{16}h^2x''(t) + \frac{4}{64}h^3x'''(t) + \frac{h^4}{256}x''''(t) =: z(t, h/4). \end{aligned} \quad (377)$$

<sub>1280</sub> We can now compute the new solution as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{x}(t+h) &= \frac{z(t, h)}{3} - 2z\left(t, \frac{h}{2}\right) + \frac{8}{3}z\left(t, \frac{h}{4}\right) \\ &= x(t) + hx'(t) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t) + \frac{h^3}{6}x'''(t) + \frac{h^4}{96}x''''(t). \end{aligned} \quad (378)$$

Thus, the local truncation error is given by

$$x(t_{n+1}) - \tilde{x}(t+h) = O(h^4),$$

<sub>1281</sub> where  $x(t_{n+1})$  is the exact solution. Now, the new solution is two orders of magnitude more accurate compared with the solution computed with the Euler method. ▲

<sup>1283</sup> **Lecture 14 Runge-Kutta methods**

<sup>1284</sup> **14.1 The first Runge-Kutta method**

<sup>1285</sup> Let us consider the following initial value problem with the right hand side depending only on  $t$

$$x' = f(t), \quad x(t_0) = x_0, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (379)$$

<sup>1286</sup> The solution to (379) is given by

$$x(t_N) = x(t_0) + \int_{t_0}^{t_N} f(t) dt. \quad (380)$$

<sup>1287</sup> The integral can be computed with the standard mid-point rule:

$$\int_{t_0}^{t_N} f(t) dt = (t_N - t_0) f\left(\frac{t_0 + t_N}{2}\right), \quad (381)$$

<sup>1288</sup> or with the repeated mid-point rule:

$$\int_{t_0}^{t_N} f(t) dt = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} f(t) dt \approx \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} h f\left(\frac{t_n + t_{n+1}}{2}\right), \quad h := t_{n+1} - t_n. \quad (382)$$

The application of the repeated mid-point rule to (380) gives

$$x(t_0 + h) = x_0 + h f\left(t_0 + \frac{h}{2}\right), \quad (383a)$$

$$x(t_1 + h) = x_1 + h f\left(t_1 + \frac{h}{2}\right), \quad (383b)$$

...      ...

$$x(t_{N-1} + h) = x_{N-1} + h f\left(t_{N-1} + \frac{h}{2}\right). \quad (383c)$$

<sup>1289</sup> In 1895, Runge asked whether it would also be possible to extend the mid-point rule to the problem

<sup>1290</sup>

$$x' = f(t, x(t)), \quad x(t_0) = x_0, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (384)$$

<sup>1291</sup> Note that now the right hand side depends on both  $t$  and  $x(t)$ . Let us take the first step of the  
<sup>1292</sup> mid-point rule and apply it to (384):

$$x(t_0 + h) = x_0 + h f\left(t_0 + \frac{h}{2}, x\left(t_0 + \frac{h}{2}\right)\right). \quad (385)$$

The only question is how to compute  $x\left(t_0 + \frac{h}{2}\right)$ . Runge proposed to use Euler's method for that, namely

$$x\left(t_0 + \frac{h}{2}\right) = x(t_0) + \frac{h}{2} f(t_0, x(t_0)). \quad (386a)$$

<sup>1293</sup> Thus, one can write (385) as

$$x(t_0 + h) = x_0 + h k_2, \quad (387)$$

1294 where  $k_1 = f(t_0, x_0)$ ,  $k_2 = f\left(t_0 + \frac{h}{2}, x_0 + \frac{h}{2}k_1\right)$ . Rewriting it in the discrete form gives a  
 1295 **2-stage Runge-Kutta (RK) method (also known as the Modified Euler method):**

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 &= f(t_n, x_n), \\ k_2 &= f\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}, x_n + \frac{h}{2}k_1\right), \\ x_{n+1} &= x_n + hk_2. \end{aligned} \quad (388)$$

1296

## 1297 14.2 The local truncation error of the 2-stage RK method

1298 In order to calculate the local truncation error of the 2-stage RK method, we have to find the  
 1299 difference between the exact solution and its approximation given by the RK method

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + hf\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}, x_n + \frac{h}{2}k_1\right). \quad (389)$$

1300 For this, we have to Taylor expand  $f\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}, x_n + \frac{h}{2}k_1\right)$ . But, before doing this, let me remind  
 1301 you the Taylor expansion of a function  $g(t + \alpha h, x + \beta h)$ :

$$g(t + \alpha h, x + \beta h) = g(t, x) + h\left(\alpha \frac{\partial g}{\partial t} + \beta \frac{\partial g}{\partial x}\right) + \frac{h^2}{2}\left(\alpha^2 \frac{\partial^2 g}{\partial t^2} + 2\frac{\partial^2 g}{\partial x \partial t} \alpha \beta + \beta^2 \frac{\partial^2 g}{\partial x^2}\right) + O(h^3). \quad (390)$$

1302 In our case,  $\alpha = \beta = \frac{1}{2}$ . Hence, the Taylor expansion of  $f\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}, x_n + \frac{h}{2}k_1\right)$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}, x_n + \frac{h}{2}k_1\right) &= f(t_n, x_n) + \left(\frac{h}{2}f_t + \frac{h}{2}k_1f_x\right) + \frac{h^2}{8}(f_{tt} + 2f_t k_1 + f_{xx}k_1^2) + O(h^3) \\ &= f(t_n, x_n) + \frac{h}{2}(f_t + f f_x) + \frac{h^2}{8}(f_{tt} + 2f_{tx}f + f_{xx}f^2) + O(h^3). \end{aligned} \quad (391)$$

1303 Using (391) in (389) gives

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + hf + \frac{h^2}{2}(f_t + f f_x) + \frac{h^3}{8}(f_{tt} + 2f_{tx}f + f_{xx}f^2) + O(h^4). \quad (392)$$

1304 Now we can find the local truncation error as the difference between the exact solution

$$x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + hx'(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t_n) + \frac{h^3}{6}x'''(t_n) + O(h^4) \quad (393)$$

1305 and the approximated solution given by the RK method (392):

$$x(t_{n+1}) - x_n = \frac{h^3}{24}(f_{tt} + 2f_{tx}f + f_{xx}f^2 + 4f_x(f_t + f_x f)) + O(h^4). \quad (394)$$

1306 Thus local truncation error is  $O(h^3)$ , and the method is said to be of order  $p = 2$ .

1307

1308 **Definition 14.1 (The order of the RK method)** If the local truncation error of the RK method  
 1309 is of order  $O(h^{p+1})$ , with  $p > 0$ , then the method is said to be of order  $p$ .

1310 **Example 14.1 (The modified Euler method for a scalar equation)** The modified Euler method

<sup>1311</sup> for the initial value problem

$$x' = (1 - 2t)x, \quad x(t_0) = 1, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N] \quad (395)$$

is given by

$$k_1 = f(t_n, x_n) = (1 - 2t_n)x_n, \quad (396a)$$

$$k_2 = f\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}, x_n + \frac{h}{2}k_1\right) = \left(1 - 2\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}\right)\right)\left(x_n + \frac{h}{2}k_1\right), \quad (396b)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + hk_2. \quad (396c)$$

<sup>1312</sup>



### <sup>1313</sup> 14.3 The general form of RK methods

<sup>1314</sup> In 1901, Kutta formulated the general scheme of what is now called Runge-Kutta methods:

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h \sum_{i=1}^s b_i k_i, \quad (397a)$$

<sup>1315</sup> with

$$k_i = f\left(t_n + hc_i, x_n + h \sum_{j=1}^s a_{ij} k_j\right), \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, s \quad (397b)$$

Another form of (397), known as a Butcher array (or Butcher tableau), is given by

$c_1$	$a_{11}$	$a_{12}$	$\cdots$	$a_{1s}$
$c_2$	$a_{21}$	$a_{22}$	$\cdots$	$a_{2s}$
$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\ddots$	$\vdots$
$c_s$	$a_{s1}$	$a_{s2}$	$\cdots$	$a_{ss}$
	$b_1$	$b_2$	$\cdots$	$b_s$

<sup>1316</sup> with

$$c_i = \sum_{j=1}^s a_{ij}, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, s. \quad (398)$$

<sup>1317</sup> Thus, given a value of  $s$ , the method depends on  $s^2 + s$  parameters  $\{a_{ij}, b_j\}$ . The method is called <sup>1318</sup> explicit if  $c_i = 0$ ,  $a_{ij} = 0$ ,  $j \geq i$ , or implicit otherwise.

For instance, the Butcher array of the 2-stage RK method (the modified Euler method) is

0	0	0
1	1	0
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	0
	0	1

<sup>1319</sup> Again, this is an explicit method, and therefore it does not require solving a nonlinear system of <sup>1320</sup> equations to find the solution (if the right hand side is nonlinear).

<sup>1321</sup>

## 1322 14.4 RK methods for systems of ODEs

1323 RK methods for systems of ODEs are exactly the same as for scalar equations. The only difference  
 1324 is that  $k$ 's are not scalars but vectors. Let us consider an example of how to apply a 2-stage RK  
 1325 method to a system of ODEs.

**Example 14.2** Consider the 2-stage RK method (also known as the improved Euler method) given by the Butcher tableau

0	0	0
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	0
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	0
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$

with

$$\mathbf{k}_1 = f(t_n, \mathbf{x}_n), \quad (399a)$$

$$\mathbf{k}_2 = f\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}, \mathbf{x}_n + \frac{h}{2}\mathbf{k}_1\right), \quad (399b)$$

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+1} = \mathbf{x}_n + \frac{h}{2}(\mathbf{k}_1 + \mathbf{k}_2), \quad (399c)$$

1326 where  $\mathbf{k}_1$ ,  $\mathbf{k}_2$ ,  $\mathbf{x}_n$ , and  $\mathbf{x}_{n+1}$  are vectors. Let us apply the improved Euler method to the following  
 1327 system of equations

$$\begin{cases} u' = tu, \\ v' = u^2v. \end{cases} \quad (400)$$

1328 Then the RK method becomes

$$\mathbf{k}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} t_n u_n \\ u_n^2 v_n \end{pmatrix} =: \begin{pmatrix} k_{11} \\ k_{21} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{k}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} (t_n + \frac{h}{2})(u_n + \frac{h}{2}k_{11}) \\ (u_n + \frac{h}{2}k_{11})^2(v_n + \frac{h}{2}k_{21}) \end{pmatrix}, \quad (401)$$

1329 and

$$\mathbf{x}_{n+1} = \mathbf{x}_n + \frac{h}{2}(\mathbf{k}_1 + \mathbf{k}_2). \quad (402)$$



1331 **Lecture 15 Order conditions for explicit RK methods**

1332 In this part we consider consider order conditions for RK methods. These are conditions imposed  
1333 on the coefficients  $a_{ij}$ ,  $b_i$ , and  $c_i$ ,  $i, j = 1, 2, \dots, s$  to guarantee a given order of accuracy.

1334 **15.1 1-stage RK methods**

The general form of 1-stage RK methods is given by

$$k_1 = f(t_n, x_n), \quad (403a)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + hb_1 k_1. \quad (403b)$$

1335 Note that for  $b_1 = 1$  it is the Euler method.

1336 The local truncation error of method (403) is given by

$$x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} = h(1 - b_1)x'(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t_n) + O(h^3). \quad (404)$$

1337 Thus, for  $b_1 = 1$  we have the one order method, and the condition  $b_1 = 1$  is called *the first order condition*.

1339 **15.2 2-stage RK methods**

1340 Let us consider the general form of 2-stage RK methods:

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 &= f(t_n, x_n), \\ k_2 &= f(t_n + ah, x_n + ahk_1), \\ x_{n+1} &= x_n + h(b_1 k_1 + b_2 k_2), \end{aligned} \quad (405)$$

1341 with coefficients

$$a = c_2 = a_{21}. \quad (406)$$

As before, we Taylor expand function  $f$  and substitute it into the equation for  $x_{n+1}$ :

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + hb_1 f_n + hb_2 f(t_n + ah, x_n + ahk_1) \quad (407a)$$

$$= x_n + hb_1 f_n + h \left( f_n + ah(f_t + f_x f)|_{t=t_n} + O(h^2) \right) \quad (407b)$$

$$= x_n + h(b_1 + b_2)f_n + ab_2 h^2 (f_t + f_x f)|_{t=t_n} + O(h^3). \quad (407c)$$

1342 The local truncation error is given by

$$x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} = h(1 - b_1 - b_2)f_n + h^2 \left( \frac{1}{2} - ab_2 \right) (f_t + f_x f)|_{t=t_n} + O(h^3). \quad (408)$$

Now, we can choose the parameters to get the order conditions:

For  $b_1 + b_2 = 1$  and  $\forall a$  the local truncation error is  $O(h^2)$ , and the method is of order  $p = 1$ ,

For  $b_1 + b_2 = 1$  and  $ab_2 = \frac{1}{2}$  the local truncation error is  $O(h^3)$ , and the method is of order  $p = 2$ .

1343 We cannot manipulate with the parameters to get a higher-order method.

1344 **Can you show that there is no 2-stage explicit RK method of order  $p = 3$ ?**

Let us define  $b_2 = \theta$ , then from

$$\begin{aligned} b_1 + b_2 &= 1 \Rightarrow b_1 = 1 - \theta, \\ ab_2 &= \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow a = \frac{1}{2\theta}, \end{aligned}$$

and then the Butcher array is given by

0	0	0
a	a	0
	1 - $\theta$	$\theta$

This defines a one-parameter family of RK methods. Some of them, we already know

$$\begin{aligned} \theta = \frac{1}{2} &\Rightarrow \text{The improved Euler method,} \\ \theta = 1 &\Rightarrow \text{The modified Euler method.} \end{aligned}$$

<sup>1345</sup> For  $\theta \neq 0$ , all methods in the family are of order 2.

### <sup>1346</sup> 15.3 3-stage RK methods

The general form of 3-stage RK method is given by the following Butcher table

0	0	0	0
$c_2$	$a_{21}$	0	0
$c_3$	$a_{31}$	$a_{32}$	0
	$b_1$	$b_2$	$b_3$

<sup>1347</sup> with

$$c_2 = a_{21}, \quad c_3 = a_{31} + a_{32}. \quad (409)$$

In the conventional form, the method is

$$k_1 = f(t_n, x_n), \quad (410a)$$

$$k_2 = f(t_n + c_2 h, x_n + a_{21} h k_1), \quad (410b)$$

$$k_3 = f(t_n + c_3 h, x_n + a_{31} h k_1 + a_{32} h k_2), \quad (410c)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h(b_1 k_1 + b_2 k_2 + b_3 k_3). \quad (410d)$$

<sup>1348</sup> Thus, 3-stage RK methods have 6 free parameters to be determined.

<sup>1349</sup> To compute the local truncation error of the method we plug  $k_1$ ,  $k_2$ , and  $k_3$  into (410d):

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + hb_1 f_n + hb_2 f(t_n + c_2 h, x_n + a_{21} h k_1) + hb_3 f(t_n + c_3 h, x_n + a_{31} h k_1 + a_{32} h k_2) \quad (411)$$

and Taylor expand  $k_2$

$$\begin{aligned} k_2 &= f(t_n + c_2 h, x_n + a_{21} h k_1) \\ &= f(t_n, x_n) + c_2 h f_t + a_{21} h k_1 f_x + \frac{1}{2} \left( (c_2 h)^2 f_{tt} + 2c_2 h^2 a_{21} k_1 f_{tx} + (a_{21} h k_1)^2 f_{xx} \right) + O(h^3) \\ &= f(t_n, x_n) + h(c_2 f_t + a_{21} f f_x) + \frac{h^2}{2} (c_2^2 f_{tt} + 2c_2 a_{21} f f_{tx} + a_{21}^2 f^2 f_{xx}) + O(h^3). \end{aligned} \quad (412)$$

and  $k_3$

$$\begin{aligned}
 k_3 &= f(t_n + c_3 h, x_n + a_{31} h k_1 + a_{32} h k_2) \\
 &= f(t_n, x_n) + c_3 h f_t + (a_{31} k_1 + a_{32} k_2) h f_x \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{2} \left( (c_3 h)^2 f_{tt} + 2c_3 h^2 (a_{31} k_1 + a_{32} k_2) f_{tx} + h^2 (a_{31} k_1 + a_{32} k_2)^2 f_{xx} \right) + O(h^3) \\
 &= f(t_n, x_n) + h \left( c_3 f_t + (a_{31} f + a_{32} k_2) f_x \right) \\
 &\quad + \frac{h^2}{2} \left( c_3^2 f_{tt} + 2c_3 (a_{31} f + a_{32} k_2) f_{tx} + (a_{31} f + a_{32} k_2)^2 f_{xx} \right) + O(h^3).
 \end{aligned} \tag{413}$$

<sub>1350</sub> Substitution of  $k_2 \approx f(t_n, x_n)$  into  $k_3$  gives

$$k_3 = f_n + h \left( c_3 f_t + (a_{31} + a_{32}) f f_x \right) + \frac{h^2}{2} \left( c_3^2 f_{tt} + 2c_3 (a_{31} + a_{32}) f f_{tx} + (a_{31} + a_{32})^2 f^2 f_{xx} \right) + O(h^3). \tag{414}$$

Substitution of  $k_2$  and  $k_3$  into (410d) results in

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h b_1 f_n \tag{415a}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\quad + h b_2 \left( f_n + h (c_2 f_t + a_{21} f f_x) + \frac{h^2}{2} (c_2^2 f_n + 2c_2 a_{21} f f_{tx} + a_{21}^2 f^2 f_{xx}) \right) \\
 &\quad + h b_3 \left( f_n + h \left( c_3 f_t + (a_{31} + a_{32}) f f_x \right) \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + \frac{h^2}{2} \left( c_3^2 f_{tt} + 2c_3 (a_{31} + a_{32}) f f_{tx} + (a_{31} + a_{32})^2 f^2 f_{xx} \right) \right) + O(h^4) \tag{415b}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$= x_n + h(b_1 + b_2 + b_3)f + h^2 \left( (c_2 b_2 + c_3 b_3) f_t + (b_2 a_{21} + b_3 (a_{31} + a_{32})) f f_x \right) + \tag{415c}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\quad \frac{h^3}{2} \left( (c_2^2 b_2 + c_3^2 b_3) f_{tt} + 2(b_2 c_2 a_{21} + b_3 c_3 (a_{31} + a_{32})) f f_{tx} \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + (b_2 a_{21}^2 + b_3 (a_{31} + a_{32})^2) f^2 f_{xx} \right) + O(h^4). \tag{415d}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$= x_n + h(b_1 + b_2 + b_3)f + h^2 \left( (c_2 b_2 + c_3 b_3) f_t + (b_2 a_{21} + b_3 (a_{31} + a_{32})) f f_x \right) + \tag{415e}$$

<sub>1351</sub> The Taylor expansion of the exact solution is given by

$$x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + h f(t_n, x_n) + \frac{h^2}{2} (f_t + f f_x) + \frac{h^3}{6} \left( f_{tt} + 2f_{tx}f + f_{xx}f^2 + f_x(f_t + f_x f) \right) + O(h^4). \tag{416}$$

<sub>1352</sub> Hence, the local truncation error is

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} &= h \left( 1 - (b_1 + b_2 + b_3) \right) f \\
 &\quad + \frac{h^2}{2} \left( (1 - 2(c_2 b_2 + c_3 b_3)) f_t + (1 - 2(b_2 a_{21} + b_3 (a_{31} + a_{32}))) f f_x \right) \\
 &\quad + \frac{h^3}{6} \left( (1 - 3(c_2^2 b_2 + c_3^2 b_3)) f_{tt} + (1 - 6(b_2 c_2 a_{21} + b_3 c_3 (a_{31} + a_{32}))) f f_{tx} \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + (1 - 3(b_2 a_{21}^2 + b_3 (a_{31} + a_{32})^2)) f^2 f_{xx} \right) + O(h^4). \tag{417}
 \end{aligned}$$

<sup>1353</sup> Using  $c_3 = a_{31} + a_{32}$  in the equation above gives

$$\begin{aligned} x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} &= h(1 - (b_1 + b_2 + b_3))f \\ &\quad + \frac{h^2}{2} \left( (1 - 2(c_2 b_2 + c_3 b_3))f_t + (1 - 2(b_2 a_{21} + b_3 c_3))f f_x \right) \\ &\quad + \frac{h^3}{6} \left( (1 - 3(c_2^2 b_2 + c_3^2 b_3))f_{tt} + (2 - 6(b_2 c_2 a_{21} + b_3 c_3^2))f f_{tx} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + (1 - 3(b_2 a_{21}^2 + b_3 c_3^2))f^2 f_{xx} + f_x(f_t + f_x f) \right) + O(h^4). \end{aligned} \tag{418}$$

<sup>1354</sup> Using  $c_2 = a_{21}$  in the equation above gives

$$\begin{aligned} x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} &= h f(1 - (b_1 + b_2 + b_3)) \\ &\quad + h^2 \left( f_t + f f_x \right) \left( \frac{1}{2} - (c_2 b_2 + c_3 b_3) \right) \\ &\quad + \frac{h^3}{6} \left( (1 - 3(c_2^2 b_2 + c_3^2 b_3))f_{tt} + (2 - 6(b_2 c_2^2 + b_3 c_3^2))f f_{tx} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + (1 - 3(b_2 c_2^2 + b_3 c_3^2))f^2 f_{xx} + f_x(f_t + f_x f) \right) + O(h^4). \end{aligned} \tag{419}$$

<sup>1355</sup> Thus we have the following order conditions:

<sup>1356</sup>

### The first order condition:

$$b_1 + b_2 + b_3 = 1, \quad x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} = O(h^2).$$

### The second order condition:

$$c_2 b_2 + c_3 b_3 = \frac{1}{2}, \quad x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} = O(h^3).$$

We cannot get the third order condition because the term  $f_x(f_t + f_x f)$  is left. However, if we substitute  $k_2 = f + h(c_2 f_t + a_{21} f f_x)$  into  $k_3$ , we will be able to recover  
**the third order conditions:**

$$b_2 c_2^2 + b_3 c_3^2 = \frac{1}{3}, \quad c_2 a_{32} b_3 = \frac{1}{6}, \quad x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} = O(h^4).$$

<sup>1357</sup> **Example 15.1** Let us consider two 3-stage RK methods given by the following Butcher arrays:

#### Heun's method

0	0	0	0
$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	0	0
$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	0	0
$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	
$\frac{1}{4}$	0	$\frac{3}{4}$	

#### Kutta's rule

0	0	0	0
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	0	0
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	0	0
$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{-1}{2}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	0
$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{1}{6}$

1358 If we take the order conditions for the 3-stage method and plug the values for Heun’s method and  
1359 Kutta’s rule we will find that these methods are of order 3. ▲

1360 It is also worth mentioning that explicit RK methods with  $s$  stages have order  $s$ , if  $s \leq 4$ .  
1361 However, it is not true in general for  $s > 4$ .

1362 **Theorem 15.1 (Butcher barrier theorem)** For  $p > 4$ , there is no explicit Runge-Kutta method  
1363 of order  $p$  with  $s = p$  stages.

## 1364 Lecture 16 Absolute stability of explicit RK methods

1365 The concept of absolute stability developed for LMMs is equally relevant to RK methods. In other  
 1366 words, absolute stability for RK methods requires  $x_n \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  for the linear ODE  $x' = \lambda x$ ,  
 1367  $\operatorname{Re}(\lambda) < 0$ .

**Example 16.1 (Stability of the  $\theta$ -method)** Let us study the absolute stability of the RK method with the Butcher tableaux

0	0	
a	a	0
	1 - $\theta$	$\theta$

with  $a = 1/(2\theta)$ . Application of the method to  $x' = \lambda x$  results in

$$k_1 = f(t_n, x_n) = \lambda x_n, \quad (420a)$$

$$k_2 = f(t_n + ah, x_n + ahk_1) = \lambda(x_n + ah\lambda x_n) \quad (420b)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h(1 - \theta)k_1 + h\theta k_2 \quad (420c)$$

$$= x_n + h(1 - \theta)\lambda x_n + h\theta\lambda(x_n + ah\lambda x_n), \text{ with } \hat{h} = \lambda h, \quad (420d)$$

$$= x_n + \hat{h}(1 - \theta)x_n + \hat{h}\theta(x_n + a\hat{h}x_n) \quad (420e)$$

$$= x_n + \hat{h}(1 - \theta)x_n + \hat{h}\theta(1 + a\hat{h})x_n \quad (420f)$$

$$= (1 + \hat{h} - \hat{h}\theta + \hat{h}\theta + \hat{h}\theta a\hat{h})x_n \quad (420g)$$

$$= (1 + \hat{h}(1 + \theta a\hat{h}))x_n, \text{ and } a = \frac{1}{2\theta}, x_{n+1} = \left(1 + \hat{h} \left(1 + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}\right)\right)x_n. \quad (420h)$$

## 1368 16.1 Stability function

1369 The stability polynomial for (420h) is

$$p(r) = r - \left(1 + \hat{h} \left(1 + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}\right)\right), \quad (421)$$

1370 and

$$x_{n+1} = R(\hat{h})x_n, \quad (422)$$

1371 where

$$R(\hat{h}) = 1 + \hat{h} \left(1 + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}\right). \quad (423)$$

1372  $R(\hat{h})$  is called the stability function of the RK method.

## 1373 16.2 Interval of absolute stability

As you can see, based on the definition of absolute stability for LMMs, the stability function  $R(\hat{h})$  is the root of the stability polynomial  $p(r)$ . Therefore, in order for RK methods to be absolutely stable, we require  $|r| < 1$ , or  $|R(\hat{h})| < 1$ . The interval of absolute stability is the set of real  $\hat{h}$  for

which  $|R(\hat{h})| < 1$ . This leads to

$$\left| 1 + \hat{h} \left( 1 + \frac{\hat{h}}{2} \right) \right| < 1, \quad (424a)$$

$$-2 < \hat{h} \left( 1 + \frac{\hat{h}}{2} \right) < 0. \quad (424b)$$

1374 Thus, the interval of absolute stability is  $\hat{h} \in (-2, 0)$ .

1375

### 1376 16.3 The region of absolute stability

1377 In order to plot the region of absolute stability, we substitute  $r = e^{is}$  into the stability polynomial 1378  $p(r)$ :

$$e^{is} - 1 + \hat{h} \left( 1 + \frac{\hat{h}}{2} \right) = 0, \quad (425)$$

1379 and solve it for  $\hat{h}$ , and then plot all the roots  $\hat{h}_1, \hat{h}_2$ , depending on the parameter  $s \in [0, 2\pi]$ .

1380 ▲

**Example 16.2 (The interval of absolute stability of the Heun method)** Find the interval of absolute stability of Heun’s method given by the Butcher tableau

0	0
$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{3}$ 0
$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{2}{3}$ 0
$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$
	$\frac{1}{4}$ 0 $\frac{3}{4}$

with

$$k_1 = f(t_n, x_n), \quad (426a)$$

$$k_2 = f \left( t_n + \frac{h}{3}, x_n + \frac{h}{3} k_1 \right), \quad (426b)$$

$$k_3 = f \left( t_n + \frac{2}{3}h, x_n + \frac{2}{3}h k_2 \right), \quad (426c)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h \left( \frac{k_1}{4} + \frac{3}{4} k_3 \right). \quad (426d)$$

*Application of the method to equations  $x' = \lambda x$  gives:*

$$k_1 = \lambda x_n, \quad (427a)$$

$$k_2 = \lambda \left( x_n + \frac{h}{3} \lambda x_n \right), \quad (427b)$$

$$k_3 = \lambda \left( x_n + \frac{2}{3} h \left( \lambda x_n + \frac{h}{3} \lambda^2 x_n \right) \right), \quad (427c)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h \left( \frac{\lambda x_n}{4} + \frac{3}{4} \lambda \left( x_n + \frac{2}{3} h \left( \lambda x_n + \frac{h}{3} \lambda^2 x_n \right) \right) \right), \text{ and } \hat{h} := \lambda h, \quad (427d)$$

$$= x_n + \hat{h} \frac{x_n}{4} + \frac{3}{4} \hat{h} \left( x_n + \frac{2}{3} \left( \hat{h} x_n + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{3} x_n \right) \right) \quad (427e)$$

$$= x_n + \hat{h} x_n + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2} x_n + \frac{\hat{h}^3}{6} x_n \quad (427f)$$

$$= R(\hat{h}) x_n, \text{ where } R(\hat{h}) = 1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2} + \frac{\hat{h}^3}{6}. \quad (427g)$$

The interval of absolute stability is

$$\left| 1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2} + \frac{\hat{h}^3}{6} \right| < 1 \quad (428a)$$

$$-2 < \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2} + \frac{\hat{h}^3}{6} < 0 \quad (428b)$$

$$-2 < \hat{h} \left( 1 + \frac{\hat{h}}{2} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{6} \right) < 0 \quad (428c)$$

$$-12 < \hat{h} \left( 6 + 3\hat{h} + \hat{h}^2 \right) < 0 \quad (428d)$$

$$\hat{h}_1 = 0, \hat{h}_{2,3} = \frac{-3 \pm 4i}{2}. \quad (428e)$$



**Example 16.3 (Stability function of Kutta's rule)** Consider the Kutta rule, 3-stage explicit RK method given by the Butcher tableau

0	0		
1	1		
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	0	
1	-1	2	0
	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	$\frac{1}{6}$

with

$$k_1 = f(t_n, x_n), \quad (429a)$$

$$k_2 = f\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}, x_n + \frac{h}{2}k_1\right), \quad (429b)$$

$$k_3 = f(t_n + h, x_n - hk_1 + 2hk_2), \quad (429c)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h\left(\frac{k_1}{6} + \frac{2}{3}k_2 + \frac{k_3}{6}\right). \quad (429d)$$

*Application of the method to equations  $x' = \lambda x$  gives:*

$$k_1 = \lambda x_n, \quad (430a)$$

$$k_2 = \lambda\left(x_n + \frac{h}{2}\lambda x_n\right), \quad (430b)$$

$$k_3 = \lambda\left(x_n - h\lambda x_n + 2h\lambda\left(x_n + \frac{h}{2}\lambda x_n\right)\right), \text{ and } \hat{h} := \lambda h, \quad (430c)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h\left(\frac{\lambda x_n}{6} + \frac{2}{3}\lambda\left(x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}x_n\right) + \frac{\lambda}{6}\left(x_n - \hat{h}x_n + 2\hat{h}\left(x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}x_n\right)\right)\right) \quad (430d)$$

$$= x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{6}x_n + \frac{2\hat{h}}{3}\left(x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}x_n\right) + \frac{\hat{h}}{6}\left(x_n + \hat{h}x_n + \hat{h}^2x_n\right) \quad (430e)$$

$$= x_n + \hat{h}x_n + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2}x_n + \frac{\hat{h}^3}{6}x_n \quad (430f)$$

$$= R(\hat{h})x_n, \quad R(\hat{h}) = 1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2} + \frac{\hat{h}^3}{6}. \quad (430g)$$

1382 As can be seen, the interval and the region of absolute stability are the same as for Heun's method.

1383 ▲

**Example 16.4 (The interval and region of absolute stability for a 4-stage RK method)** Let us consider a 4-stage explicit RK method given by the Butcher tableau

0	0			
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	0		
$\frac{1}{2}$	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	0	
1	0	0	1	
	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{6}$

with

$$k_1 = f(t_n, x_n), \quad (431a)$$

$$k_2 = f\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}, x_n + \frac{h}{2}k_1\right), \quad (431b)$$

$$k_3 = f\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}, x_n + \frac{h}{2}k_2\right), \quad (431c)$$

$$k_4 = f(t_n + h, x_n + hk_3), \quad (431d)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h\left(\frac{k_1}{6} + \frac{k_2}{3} + \frac{k_3}{3} + \frac{k_4}{6}\right). \quad (431e)$$

*Application of the method to equations  $x' = \lambda x$  gives:*

$$k_1 = \lambda x_n, \quad (432a)$$

$$k_2 = \lambda\left(x_n + \frac{h}{2}\lambda x_n\right), \quad (432b)$$

$$k_3 = \lambda\left(x_n + \frac{h}{2}\lambda\left(x_n + \frac{h}{2}\lambda x_n\right)\right), \quad (432c)$$

$$k_4 = \lambda\left(x_n + h\lambda\left(x_n + \frac{h}{2}\lambda\left(x_n + \frac{h}{2}\lambda x_n\right)\right)\right), \text{ and } \lambda h := \hat{h}, \quad (432d)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h\left(\lambda x_n + \frac{\lambda}{3}\left(x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}x_n\right) + \frac{\lambda}{3}\left(x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}\left(x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}x_n\right)\right)\right) \quad (432e)$$

$$+ \frac{\lambda}{6}\left(x_n + \hat{h}\left(x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}\left(x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}x_n\right)\right)\right) \quad (432f)$$

$$= x_n + \hat{h}x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{3}\left(x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}x_n\right) + \frac{\hat{h}}{3}\left(x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}\left(x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}x_n\right)\right) \quad (432g)$$

$$+ \frac{\hat{h}}{6}\left(x_n + \hat{h}\left(x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}\left(x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2}x_n\right)\right)\right), \quad (432h)$$

$$= x_n + \hat{h}x_n + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2}x_n + \frac{\hat{h}^3}{6}x_n + \frac{\hat{h}^4}{24}x_n, \quad (432i)$$

$$= R(\hat{h})x_n, \quad R(\hat{h}) = 1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2} + \frac{\hat{h}^3}{6} + \frac{\hat{h}^4}{24}. \quad (432j)$$

1384 Then, the interval of absolute stability is a set of real  $\hat{h}$  such that

$$\left|1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2} + \frac{\hat{h}^3}{6} + \frac{\hat{h}^4}{24}\right| < 1. \quad (433)$$

1385



## 1386 16.4 Stability function for 3-stage third-order RK methods

Let's take a retrospective look at, say, the 3-stage RK methods we have studied. As you have noticed, all of them have the same stability function. Does this mean that all 3-stage RK methods inherit this feature? Let us check it. For this, we consider the whole family of 3-stage RK methods,

which are represented by the Butcher table

0	0		
c <sub>2</sub>	a <sub>21</sub>	0	
c <sub>3</sub>	a <sub>31</sub>	a <sub>32</sub>	
	b <sub>1</sub>	b <sub>2</sub>	b <sub>3</sub>

with

$$k_1 = f(t_n, x_n), \quad (434a)$$

$$k_2 = f(t_n + c_2 h, x_n + h a_{21} k_1), \quad (434b)$$

$$k_3 = f(t_n + c_3 h, x_n + h a_{31} k_1 + h a_{32} k_2), \quad (434c)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h(b_1 k_1 + b_2 k_2 + b_3 k_3). \quad (434d)$$

The order conditions for 3-stage methods to be of third-order are

$$b_2 c_2^2 + b_3 c_3^2 = \frac{1}{3}, \quad b_1 + b_2 + b_3 = 1, \quad \text{where } c_2 = a_{21}, \text{ and } a_{31} + a_{32} = c_3, \quad (435a)$$

$$c_2 a_{32} b_3 = \frac{1}{6}, \quad b_2 c_2 + b_3 c_3 = \frac{1}{2}. \quad (435b)$$

In order to find the interval of absolute stability for all 3-stage third-order RK methods we apply its apply them to the equation  $x' = \lambda x$ :

$$k_1 = \lambda x_n \Rightarrow h k_1 = \hat{h} x_n, \quad \text{with } \hat{h} = \lambda h, \quad (436a)$$

$$k_2 = (x_n + \lambda h a_{21} x_n) \lambda \Rightarrow h k_2 = \hat{h} (x_n + \hat{h} a_{21} x_n), \quad (436b)$$

$$k_3 = (x_n + h \lambda a_{31} x_n + h a_{32} \lambda (x_n + \lambda h a_{21} x_n)) \lambda \Rightarrow \quad (436c)$$

$$h k_3 = (x_n + \hat{h} a_{31} x_n + \hat{h} a_{32} (x_n + \hat{h} a_{21} x_n)) \hat{h}, \quad (436d)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n \hat{h} (b_1 x_n + b_2 (x_n + \hat{h} a_{21} x_n) + b_3 (x_n + \hat{h} a_{31} x_n + \hat{h} a_{32} (x_n + \hat{h} a_{21} x_n))) \quad (436e)$$

$$= x_n + \hat{h} (x_n (b_1 + b_2 + b_3) + \hat{h} x_n (b_2 a_{21} + b_3 (a_{31} + a_{32})) + b_3 \hat{h}^2 a_{32} a_{21} x_n) \quad (436f)$$

$$\text{using } b_1 + b_2 + b_3 = 1, \quad b_2 a_{21} + b_3 (a_{31} + a_{32}) = \frac{1}{2}, \quad a_{21} a_{32} b_3 = \frac{1}{6} \text{ gives} \quad (436g)$$

$$= x_n + \hat{h} \left( x_n + \frac{\hat{h}}{2} x_n + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{6} x_n \right) \quad (436h)$$

$$= R(\hat{h}) x_n, \quad R(\hat{h}) = 1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2} + \frac{\hat{h}^3}{6}. \quad (436i)$$

<sup>1387</sup> We have obtained the same stability polynomial for all 3-stage third-order RK methods. Thus, their  
<sup>1388</sup> interval of absolute stability is also the same.

## <sup>1389</sup> 16.5 Stability function for s-stage RK methods

<sup>1390</sup> Our goal is to find the stability function for an  $s$ -stage method. For this, we apply an  $s$ -stage RK  
<sup>1391</sup> method to the equation  $x' = \lambda x$ . It leads to  $x_{n+1} = R(\hat{h}) x_n$ . Let us Taylor expand the exact

1392 solution  $x(t_{n+1})$  about  $t = t_n$

$$x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + hx'(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t_n) + \frac{h^3}{6}x'''(t_n) + \cdots + \frac{h^s}{s!}x^{(s)}(t_n) + O(h^{s+1}). \quad (437)$$

1393 Now, we can substitute  $x' = \lambda x$ ,  $x'' = \lambda x' = \lambda^2 x$ ,  $x''' = \lambda^3 x$ , ... into the Taylor expansion that  
1394 results in

$$x(t_{n+1}) = \left(1 + \hat{h} + \frac{\hat{h}^2}{2} + \cdots + \frac{\hat{h}^s}{s!}\right)x(t_n) + O(\hat{h}^{s+1}), \quad (438)$$

1395 where  $\hat{h} := \lambda h$ . But, this is nothing more than the Taylor expansion of  $e^{\hat{h}}$ . Thus, we have  
1396  $x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} = O(\hat{h}^{s+1})$ , and

$$R(\hat{h}) = e^{\hat{h}} + O(\hat{h}^{s+1}). \quad (439)$$

1397 It is now clear that  $|R(\hat{h})| \rightarrow \infty$  as  $\hat{h} \rightarrow -\infty$ , so that no explicit RK method can be  $A$ -stable.  
1398 However, since  $|R(\hat{h})| \leq 1$ , and  $R(\hat{h}) = 1$  at  $\hat{h} = 0$ , RK methods are always zero stable. Note that  
1399 the interval and region of absolute stability increase with  $s$ .

1400

## 1401 16.6 Absolute stability of RK methods for systems

1402 We have already discussed the absolute stability of LMMs for systems of ODEs. The similar argument  
1403 is valid for RK methods applied to

$$u' = Au, \quad u \in \mathbb{R}^m, \quad A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m}. \quad (440)$$

1404 Let us consider the application of the 2-stage method to system (440)

$$\begin{array}{c|cc} 0 & 0 \\ a & a & 0 \\ \hline & 1-\theta & \theta \end{array}, \quad (441)$$

with  $a = 1/(2\theta)$  and

$$k_1 = f(t_n, x_n), \quad (442a)$$

$$k_2 = f(t_n + ah, x_n + ahk_1), \quad (442b)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h((1-\theta)k_1 + \theta k_2), \quad (442c)$$

Application of the method to (440) gives

$$k_1 = Au_n, \quad (443a)$$

$$k_2 = A(u_n + ahAu_n), \quad (443b)$$

$$u_{n+1} = u_n + h((1-\theta)Au_n + \theta A(u_n + ahAu_n)) \quad (443c)$$

$$= u_n + h((1-\theta)Au_n + \theta AhAu_n) + \frac{(Ah)^2}{2}u_n \quad (443d)$$

$$= u_n + Ahu_n + \frac{(Ah)^2}{2}u_n \quad (443e)$$

$$= R(Ah)u_n, \quad R(Ah) = 1 + Ah + \frac{(Ah)^2}{2}. \quad (443f)$$

1405 We have the same stability polynomial as for the scalar equation. Using the substitution  $u = Vx$   
1406 in (440), we find

$$Vx' = AVx. \quad (444)$$

1407 Multiplication of this equation by  $V^{-1}$  gives

$$x' = \Lambda x, \quad (445)$$

1408 which leads to

$$x_{n+1} = R(\Lambda h)x_n, \quad (446)$$

1409 where  $\Lambda$  is a diagonal matrix of eigenvalues of  $A$ . This is the system in which all equations are  
1410 uncoupled. Thus, to ensure absolute stability of the RK method for the system,  $\widehat{h}_i := h\lambda_i$  has to  
1411 be within the region of absolute stability for every eigenvalue  $\lambda_i$ ,  $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ .

## 1412 Lecture 17 Implicit RK methods

1413 In this part we will derive order conditions for 2-stage implicit RK methods and discuss absolute  
1414 stability of these methods.

### 1415 17.1 Order conditions for 2-stage implicit RK methods

Let us skip the order conditions for the 1-stage implicit RK methods, and start from the 2-stage methods, which have the following Butcher tableaux

$c_1$	$a_{11}$	$a_{12}$
$c_2$	$a_{21}$	$a_{22}$
	$b_1$	$b_2$

with

$$c_1 = a_{11} + a_{12}, \quad (447a)$$

$$c_2 = a_{21} + a_{22}. \quad (447b)$$

In the conventional form, the method can be written as

$$k_1 = f(t_n + c_1 h, x_n + (a_{11} k_1 + a_{12} k_2) h), \quad (448a)$$

$$k_2 = f(t_n + c_2 h, x_n + (a_{21} k_1 + a_{22} k_2) h), \quad (448b)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h(b_1 k_1 + b_2 k_2). \quad (448c)$$

1416 As for explicit RK methods, the derivation of order conditions for implicit RK methods is based on  
1417 Taylor expansions of  $k_1$  and  $k_2$ . Let us Taylor expand  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  about  $(t_n, x_n)$  up to order  $O(h^3)$ :

$$k_1 = f + h(c_1 f_t + (a_{11} k_1 + a_{12} k_2) f_x) + \frac{h^2}{2} (c_1^2 f_{tt} + 2c_1(a_{11} k_1 + a_{12} k_2) f_{xt} + (a_{11} k_1 + a_{12} k_2)^2 f_{xx}) + O(h^3). \quad (449)$$

1418

$$k_2 = f + h(c_2 f_t + (a_{21} k_1 + a_{22} k_2) f_x) + \frac{h^2}{2} (c_2^2 f_{tt} + 2c_2(a_{21} k_1 + a_{22} k_2) f_{xt} + (a_{21} k_1 + a_{22} k_2)^2 f_{xx}) + O(h^3). \quad (450)$$

Substitution of the Taylor expansions of  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  up to order  $O(h^2)$  into the second term of  $k_1$  and  $k_2$ , and the Taylor expansions of  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  up to order  $O(h)$  into the third term of  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  gives:

$$k_1 = f + h \left( c_1 f_t + (a_{11}(f + h(c_1 f_t + (a_{11} k_1 + a_{12} k_2) f_x)) + a_{12}(f + h(c_2 f_t + (a_{21} k_1 + a_{22} k_2) f_x))) f_x \right) + \frac{h^2}{2} (c_1^2 f_{tt} + 2c_1^2 f f_{xt} + c_1^2 f^2 f_{xx}) + O(h^3). \quad (451)$$

And substitute the Taylor expansion of  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  up to order  $O(h)$  into the second term of  $k_1$  again:

$$k_1 = f + h \left( c_1 f_t + (a_{11}(f + h(c_1 f_t + c_1 f_x f)) + a_{12}(f + h(c_2 f_t + c_2 f f_x))) f_x \right) + \frac{h^2}{2} (c_1^2 f_{tt} + 2c_1^2 f f_{xt} + c_1^2 f^2 f_{xx}) + O(h^3). \quad (452)$$

<sup>1419</sup> Then, we have

$$k_1 = f + h \left( c_1 f_t + (a_{11}(f + c_1 h f') + a_{12}(f + c_2 h f')) f_x \right) + \frac{h^2}{2} c_1^2 (f_{tt} + 2 f f_{xt} + f^2 f_{xx}) + O(h^3), \quad (453)$$

<sup>1420</sup> with  $f' = f_t + f_x f$ .

<sup>1421</sup> The same for  $k_2$ , namely

$$k_2 = f + h \left( c_2 f_t + (a_{21}(f + c_1 h f') + a_{22}(f + c_2 h f')) f_x \right) + \frac{h^2}{2} c_2^2 (f_{tt} + 2 f f_{xt} + f^2 f_{xx}) + O(h^3). \quad (454)$$

Substitution of the Taylor expansion of  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  into (448c) gives

$$\begin{aligned} x_{n+1} &= x_n + h b_1 \left( f + h (c_1 f_t + (a_{11}(f + c_1 h f') + a_{12}(f + c_2 h f')) f_x) + \frac{h^2}{2} c_1^2 (f_{tt} + 2 f f_{xt} + f^2 f_{xx}) \right) \\ &\quad h b_2 \left( f + h (c_2 f_t + (a_{21}(f + c_1 h f') + a_{22}(f + c_2 h f')) f_x) + \frac{h^2}{2} c_2^2 (f_{tt} + 2 f f_{xt} + f^2 f_{xx}) \right) + O(h^4). \end{aligned} \quad (455)$$

<sup>1422</sup> The Taylor expansion of the exact solution is given by

$$x(t_{n+1}) = x(t_n) + h f + \frac{h^2}{2} (f_t + f_x f) + \frac{h^3}{6} (f_{tt} + 2 f_{xt} f + f_{xx} f^2 + f_x (f_t + f f_x)) + O(h^4). \quad (456)$$

<sup>1423</sup> In order to get the order conditions we compute the local truncation error and find the restrictions  
<sup>1424</sup> on the coefficients which give the local truncation error of different orders. In particular, we find:

<sup>1425</sup> **The first order condition:**

$$b_1 + b_2 = 1, \quad x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} = O(h^2), \quad (457)$$

<sup>1426</sup> **The second order condition:**

$$b_1 c_1 + b_2 c_2 = \frac{1}{2}, \quad x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} = O(h^3), \quad (458)$$

**The third order conditions:**

$$b_1 c_1^2 + b_2 c_2^2 = \frac{1}{3}, \quad b_1 (a_{11} c_1 + a_{12} c_2) + b_2 (a_{21} c_1 + a_{22} c_2) = \frac{1}{6}, \quad x(t_{n+1}) - x_{n+1} = O(h^4). \quad (459)$$

## <sup>1427</sup> 17.2 Absolute stability of 1-stage implicit RK methods

The concept of absolute stability for implicit RK methods does not change, and remains the same as for all methods studied in the course. However, since our focus is on implicit RK methods, one has to explicitly express the stability polynomial. Let us consider the general form of 1-stage implicit RK methods

$$\begin{array}{c|c} c_1 & a_{11} \\ \hline & b_1 \end{array}$$

with  $c_1 = a_{11} = a$ , and

$$k_1 = f(t_n + ha, x_n + hak_1), \quad (460a)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + hb_1 k_1. \quad (460b)$$

<sup>1428</sup> Application of method (460) to the equation

$$x' = \lambda x, \quad \operatorname{Re}(\lambda) < 0 \quad (461)$$

<sup>1429</sup> gives

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 &= \lambda(x_n + hak_1), \\ k_1 &= \frac{\lambda x_n}{1 - \hat{h}a}, \quad \hat{h} := \lambda h, \\ x_{n+1} &= x_n + \frac{\hat{h}x_n}{1 - \hat{h}a} b_1. \end{aligned} \quad (462)$$

<sup>1430</sup> Using the 1st and 2nd order conditions for 1-stage implicit RK methods ( $b_1 = 1, a = \frac{1}{2}$ ) leads to

$$\begin{aligned} x_{n+1} &= x_n + \frac{\hat{h}x_n}{1 - \frac{\hat{h}}{2}}, \\ p(r) &= r - \left(1 + \frac{\hat{h}}{1 - \frac{\hat{h}}{2}}\right) \\ &= r - R(\hat{h}), \quad R(\hat{h}) := \left(1 + \frac{\hat{h}}{1 - \frac{\hat{h}}{2}}\right). \end{aligned} \quad (463)$$

<sup>1431</sup> Thus, the interval of absolute stability is

$$|r| = |R(\hat{h})| < 1, \quad \hat{h} \in (-\infty, 0). \quad (464)$$

### <sup>1432</sup> 17.3 Absolute stability of 2-stage implicit RK methods

In order to study the absolute stability of the 2-stage implicit RK method in its general form

$$k_1 = f(t_n + c_1 h, x_n + (a_{11}k_1 + a_{12}k_2)h), \quad (465a)$$

$$k_2 = f(t_n + c_2 h, x_n + (a_{21}k_1 + a_{22}k_2)h), \quad (465b)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h(b_1k_1 + b_2k_2). \quad (465c)$$

<sup>1433</sup> we apply it to the equation  $x' = \lambda x, \quad \operatorname{Re}(\lambda) < 0$  that gives

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 &= \lambda(x_n + (a_{11}k_1 + a_{12}k_2)h), \\ k_2 &= \lambda(x_n + (a_{21}k_1 + a_{22}k_2)h). \end{aligned} \quad (466)$$

<sup>1434</sup> To proceed, we have to solve this system for  $k_1, k_2$  and then plug the solution into (465c) to get  
<sup>1435</sup> the stability polynomial.

<sup>1436</sup> **Can you do it?**

## 1437 Lecture 18 Adaptive step size control

1438 All methods we have discussed so far use a fixed time step to integrate over the interval  $[t_0, t_N]$ .  
 1439 Thus, the number of steps is  $(t_N - t_0)/h$ , and the accuracy of the results is of order  $O(h^p)$  for  
 1440 a method of order  $p$ . In this lecture, we explore the possibility of using different time steps  $h_n$  at  
 1441 different times  $t_n$  in order to improve the methods efficiency, i.e. to obtain the same accuracy with  
 1442 fewer steps or better accuracy with the same number of steps. Based on this simple idea, one can  
 1443 consider using an adaptive time step size: small time steps for rapidly varied solutions, and large  
 1444 time steps for slowly varied solutions.

### 1445 18.1 How to choose the step size?

1446 There are many step size control strategies. In this course, we will consider adaptive step size  
 1447 control for one-step methods which is based on the control of the local truncation error given by  
 1448 the reminder

$$R_{n+1}(h_n) = H(t_n)h_n^{p+1} + O(h_n^{p+2}), \quad (467)$$

1449 where  $H(t_n)$  is a  $p+1$  time derivative of the solution multiplied by an error constant.

1450 Suppose that a numerical solution  $x_n$  has already been computed with a time step  $h_n$ . To compute  
 1451 the solution  $x_{n+1}$  we have to choose a tolerance  $\varepsilon > 0$  and compute the reminder  $R_{n+1}(h_n)$ . Then,  
 1452 there are three options:

- 1453 1. if  $|R_{n+1}(h_n)| = \varepsilon$  then  $h_n$  is accepted, and we can compute  $x_{n+1}$  with  $h_n$ .
- 1454 2. if  $|R_{n+1}(h_n)| < \varepsilon$  then  $h_n$  is rejected (too small), and we compute  $x_{n+1}$  with a larger time  
 1455 step  $h_{\text{new}}$ .
- 1456 3. if  $|R_{n+1}(h_n)| > \varepsilon$  then  $h_n$  is rejected (too large), and we compute  $x_{n+1}$  with a smaller time  
 1457 step  $h_{\text{new}}$ .

Note that we take the absolute value of the reminder, since  $\varepsilon$  is positive. The question is how to compute  $h_{\text{new}}$ ? From (467) we know that

$$R_{n+1}(h_n) \approx H(t_n)h_n^{p+1}$$

1458 and then

$$H(t_n) = \frac{R_{n+1}(h_n)}{h_n^{p+1}}. \quad (468)$$

On the other hand, we want

$$R_{n+1}(h_{\text{new}}) = \varepsilon \approx |H(t_n)|h_{\text{new}}^{p+1}$$

1459 which in turn gives

$$h_{\text{new}}^{p+1} = \frac{\varepsilon}{|H(t_n)|}. \quad (469)$$

1460 Upon substitution of (468) into (470) we have

$$h_{\text{new}}^{p+1} = h_n^{p+1} \left| \frac{\varepsilon}{R_{n+1}(h_n)} \right|. \quad (470)$$

Raising the last equation to the power  $\frac{1}{p+1}$

$$h_{\text{new}} = h_n \left| \frac{\varepsilon}{R_{n+1}(h_n)} \right|^{\frac{1}{p+1}}. \quad (471a)$$

<sup>1461</sup> Thus, if we know how to compute the reminder  $R_{n+1}(h_n)$ , we can compute the new time step  $h_{\text{new}}$ .

## <sup>1462</sup> 18.2 Taylor series methods

<sup>1463</sup> The  $TS(p)$  method is given by

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h x'_n + \frac{h^2}{2} x''_n + \cdots + \frac{h^p}{p!} x_n^{(p)}, \quad (472)$$

<sup>1464</sup> where  $x'_n = f_n$ . The local truncation error is

$$R_{n+1} = \frac{h_n^{p+1}}{(p+1)!} x^{(p+1)}(t_n) + O(h_n^{p+2}), \quad (473)$$

<sup>1465</sup> in which the leading term can be approximated by replacing  $x^{(p+1)}(t_n)$  with  $x_n^{(p+1)}$ , thus giving

$$R_{n+1} = \frac{h_n^{p+1}}{(p+1)!} x_n^{(p+1)}, \quad (474)$$

for which

$$H(t_n) = \frac{x_n^{(p+1)}}{(p+1)!},$$

<sup>1466</sup> and therefore

$$R_{n+1} = |H(t_n)| h_n^{p+1} \Rightarrow H(t_n) = \frac{R_{n+1}}{h_n^{p+1}}. \quad (475)$$

<sup>1467</sup> Now, we require

$$\varepsilon = |H(t_n)| h_{\text{new}}^{p+1}. \quad (476)$$

Then, we have

$$h_{\text{new}}^{p+1} = \left| \frac{\varepsilon}{R_{n+1}} \right| h_n^{p+1} \Rightarrow h_{\text{new}} = h_n \left| \frac{\varepsilon}{R_{n+1}} \right|^{\frac{1}{p+1}}. \quad (477a)$$

<sup>1468</sup> If the current step  $h_n$  is accepted, we progress with  $h_n$ . Otherwise, the time step  $h_n$  is rejected, and  
<sup>1469</sup> we compute the solution with  $h_{\text{new}}$ .

<sup>1470</sup> It remains to choose the suitable value for  $h_0$ . It can be done by setting  $|R_0| = \varepsilon$  that gives

$$\varepsilon = h_0^{p+1} \left| \frac{x_0^{(p+1)}}{(p+1)!} \right| \Rightarrow h_0 = \left| \frac{\varepsilon (p+1)!}{x_0^{(p+1)}} \right|^{\frac{1}{p+1}}. \quad (478)$$

**Example 18.1 (Automatic step size control for the Euler method; scalar ODE)** Let us consider the ODE

$$x' = (1 - 2t)x, \quad x(t_0) = 1, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N],$$

<sup>1471</sup> and apply the Euler method:

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h_n(1 - 2t_n)x_n. \quad (479)$$

<sup>1472</sup> To compute  $h_{\text{new}}$ , we use the previously derived formula

$$h_{\text{new}} = h_n \left| \frac{\varepsilon}{R_{n+1}} \right|^{\frac{1}{p+1}}, \quad \text{with } p = 1 \text{ and } R_{n+1} = \frac{h_n^2}{2} x''_n. \quad (480)$$

<sup>1473</sup> Then, we have

$$h_{\text{new}} = h_n \left| \frac{2\varepsilon}{h_n^2 x_n''} \right|^{\frac{1}{2}} = \left| \frac{2\varepsilon}{x_n''} \right|^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad (481)$$

where

$$x_n'' = -2x_n + (1 - 2t)x_n' \quad (482a)$$

$$= -2x_n + (1 - 2t)^2 x_n \quad (482b)$$

$$= ((1 - 2t)^2 - 2)x_n. \quad (482c)$$

The initial step is given by

$$h_0 = \left| \frac{2\varepsilon}{x_0''} \right|^{\frac{1}{2}} = \sqrt{2\varepsilon}, \quad x_0'' = -1.$$

<sup>1474</sup>



**Example 18.2 (Automatic step size control for the TS(2) method; scalar ODE)** Using formula (471a) for TS(2) applied to

$$x' = (1 - 2t)x, \quad x(t_0) = 1, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N],$$

<sup>1475</sup> we have

$$h_{\text{new}} = \left| \frac{6\varepsilon}{x_n'''^{\frac{1}{3}}} \right|. \quad (483)$$

$$x_n''' = \left( ((1 - 2t)^2 - 2)x_n \right)' \quad (484a)$$

$$= -4(1 - 2t)x_n + ((1 - 2t)^2 - 2)x_n' \quad (484b)$$

$$= -4(1 - 2t)x_n + ((1 - 2t)^2 - 2)(1 - 2t)x_n \quad (484c)$$

$$= (1 - 2t)((1 - 2t)^2 - 6)x_n, \quad x'''(0) = -5, \quad (484d)$$

<sup>1476</sup> and therefore (for  $p = 2$ ) we have

$$h_0 = \left| \frac{\varepsilon(p+1)!}{x^{(p+1)}} \right|^{\frac{1}{p+1}} \stackrel{p=2}{=} \left| \frac{6\varepsilon}{x_0'''} \right|^{\frac{1}{3}} = \left( \frac{6}{5}\varepsilon \right)^{\frac{1}{3}}. \quad (485)$$

<sup>1477</sup>



**Example 18.3 (Automatic step size control for the Euler method; system of ODEs)** Let us consider the following system of equations

$$x' = Ax + g, \quad A = \begin{pmatrix} -8 & 8 \\ 0 & -\frac{1}{8} \end{pmatrix}, \quad g = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{5}{8} \end{pmatrix}, \quad x = \begin{pmatrix} 100 \\ 20 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (486a)$$

$$(486b)$$

<sup>1478</sup> The Euler method for this system is

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + h(Ax + g). \quad (487)$$

As for the scalar ODE, the step size criterion is

$$h_{\text{new}} = \left( \frac{2\varepsilon}{\|x_n''\|} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad \text{where } \|x\| = (x^T x)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad (488a)$$

$$h_0 = \left( \frac{2\varepsilon}{\|x_0''\|} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad (488b)$$

1479 with  $x'' = Ax' = A^2x + Ag$ . ▲

### 1480 18.3 One-step LMMs

1481 The general procedure of step size control for LMMs is essentially the same as that of TS methods.  
1482 The main difference is that repeated differentiation of the ODE cannot be used to estimate the  
1483 local truncation error, as this would negate the benefits of using LMMs. New technique is required  
1484 to estimate higher order derivatives.

1485 As an example of a 1-step LMM, we take the Euler method. The local truncation error of the  
1486 method is given by

$$R_{n+1} = \frac{h_n^2}{2} x''(t_n) + O(h_n^3). \quad (489)$$

To approximate  $x''(t_n)$ , we Taylor expand  $x(t_{n+1})$  and differentiate it

$$x'(t_{n+1}) = x'(t_n) + h_n x''(t_n) + \frac{h_n^2}{2} x'''(t_n) + O(h_n^3), \quad (490a)$$

$$x''(t_n) = \frac{x'(t_{n+1}) - x'(t_n)}{h_n} + O(h_n), \quad (490b)$$

$$x''(t_n) \approx \frac{x'_{n+1} - x'_n}{h_n}. \quad (490c)$$

1487 Thus,

$$R_{n+1} = \frac{h_n}{2} (x'_{n+1} - x'_n), \quad (491)$$

1488 and this can be used to update the step size:

$$h_{\text{new}} = h_n \left| \frac{\varepsilon}{R_{n+1}} \right|^{\frac{1}{2}}. \quad (492)$$

1489 **Example 18.4 (The Trapezoidal rule with adaptive step size control)** The goal of this ex-  
1490 ample is to show how to develop the Trapezoidal rule with automatic step size control. As we know,  
1491 the Trapezoidal rule is

$$x_{n+1} - x_n = \frac{h_n}{2} (f_{n+1} + f_n). \quad (493)$$

Let us compute the local truncation error:

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h_n}{2} (x'_{n+1} + x'_n), \quad (494a)$$

$$x'_{n+1} = x'_n + h_n x''_n + \frac{h_n^2}{2} x'''_n, \quad (494b)$$

$$x_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h_n}{2} (x'_n + h_n x''_n + \frac{h_n^2}{2} x'''_n + x'_n). \quad (494c)$$

<sup>1492</sup> Thus, we have

$$R_{n+1} = -\frac{h_n^3}{12}x_n''' + O(h^4). \quad (495)$$

<sup>1493</sup> To compute  $x'''(t_n)$ , we can use the central difference approximation:

$$x'''(t_n) \approx \frac{x'_{n+1} - 2x'_n + x'_{n-1}}{h_n^2}. \quad (496)$$

<sup>1494</sup> Thus, the step size can be updated as

$$h_{\text{new}} = h_n \left| \frac{\varepsilon}{R_{n+1}} \right|^{\frac{1}{3}}, \quad R_{n+1} = -\frac{h_n}{12} (x'_{n+1} - 2x'_n + x'_{n-1}). \quad (497)$$

<sup>1495</sup> The process is initiated with using two small time steps  $h_0 = h_1 = \varepsilon$ . ▲

## <sup>1496</sup> 18.4 Runge-Kutta methods

To use the step size control machinery with RK methods, typically, two related RK methods are used. Namely, one RK method is of order  $p$ , whereas the other is of order  $p+1$ . Let us assume that these two methods give numerical solutions  $x_{n+1}^{

}$  and  $x_n^{}$ , respectively. Then, the difference  $x_n^{} - x_{n+1}^{

}$  provides an estimate of the error of the lower order method. In particular, the error of the lower-order method is given by

$$e_n^{

} = x(t_n) - x_n^{

} = O(h^p), \quad (498a)$$

while the error of the higher-order method is

$$e_n^{} = x(t_n) - x_n^{} = O(h^{p+1}), \quad (499a)$$

where  $x(t_n)$  is the exact solution. We can express  $x(t_n)$  from (499a)

$$x(t_n) = x_n^{} + O(h^{p+1})$$

and plug it into (498a):

$$e_n^{

} = x_n^{} - x_n^{

} + O(h^{p+1}).$$

<sup>1497</sup> Thus, the difference between the numerical solution of the higher-order method and the lower-order method

$$x_n^{} - x_n^{

} \quad (500)$$

<sup>1499</sup> can be used as an estimation of the leading term in the error of the lower order method. Generally speaking, such an approach would be inefficient, since it would involve computing two sets of  $k$ -values in both RK methods. This duplication can be avoided if the  $k$ -values of the lower order method are a subset of those of the higher order method. If this is the case then one can get two values for the price of one.

## <sup>1504</sup> Example 18.5 (Adaptive step size control for Euler’s method and the improved Euler method)

<sup>1505</sup> As an example of adaptive step size control, we consider two methods. The first one is the Euler method (1st order method in terms of global error)

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 &= f(t_n, x_n), \\ x_{n+1}^{} &= x_n + hk_1. \end{aligned} \quad (501)$$

1507 The second method is the improved Euler method (2nd order method in terms of global error):

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 &= f(t_n, x_n), \\ k_2 &= f(t_n + h_n, x_n + h_n k_1), \\ x_{n+1}^{<2>} &= x_n + \frac{h}{2}(k_1 + k_2). \end{aligned} \quad (502)$$

1508 Note that the  $k_1$  in the improved Euler method is computed in the Euler method, therefore we do  
1509 not need to recompute it again.

1510 The local truncation error of the Euler method can be estimated as

$$R_{n+1} = x_{n+1}^{<2>} - x_{n+1}^{<1>}, \quad (503)$$

1511 so that the step size control formula becomes

$$h_{new} = h_n \left| \frac{\varepsilon}{R_{n+1}} \right|^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad (504)$$

1512 where

$$R_{n+1} = x_n + \frac{h_n}{2}(k_1 + k_2) - (x_n + h_n k_1) = \frac{h_n}{2}(k_2 - k_1). \quad (505)$$

1513



**Example 18.6 (Adaptive step size control for RK(2,3) method)** Let us consider a third-order method with the Butcher tableau

0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0
1	1	0	0
1	1	1	0
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	0
	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{3}$

with

$$\tilde{k}_1 = f(t_n, x_n), \quad (506a)$$

$$\tilde{k}_2 = f(t_n + h, x_n + hk_1), \quad (506b)$$

$$\tilde{k}_3 = f\left(t_n + \frac{h}{2}, x_n + \frac{h}{4}k_1 + \frac{h}{4}k_2\right), \quad (506c)$$

$$x_{n+1}^{<3>} = x_n + h \left( \frac{\tilde{k}_1}{6} + \frac{\tilde{k}_2}{6} + \frac{2\tilde{k}_3}{3} \right). \quad (506d)$$

If we consider the improved Euler method

0	0	0
0	0	0
1	1	0
	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$

with

$$k_1 = f(t_n, x_n), \quad (507a)$$

$$k_2 = f(t_n + h, x_n + h), \quad (507b)$$

$$x_{n+1}^{<2>} = x_n + \frac{h}{2}(k_1 + k_2). \quad (507c)$$

1514 As we can see, the first two stages of the original 3-stage RK method  $\tilde{k}_1$  and  $\tilde{k}_2$  can be used to  
1515 compute the two stages of the improved Euler method, since

$$k_1 = \tilde{k}_1, \quad k_2 = \tilde{k}_2. \quad (508)$$

1516 This gives the following step size control formula:

$$h_{new} = h_n \left| \frac{\varepsilon}{R_{n+1}} \right|^{\frac{1}{3}}, \quad R_{n+1} = x_{n+1}^{<3>} - x_{n+1}^{<2>}. \quad (509)$$

1517



1518 **Lecture 19 Boundary value problems**

1519 In this lecture, we will consider Boundary Value Problems (BVPs). Let us start from a first-order  
1520 initial value problem (IVP) of the form

$$x' = f(t, x), \quad x(t_0) = x_0, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N]. \quad (510)$$

1521 Since this is an IVP we need an initial condition to define the solution  $x(t)$  uniquely.

1522 In case of a second-order equation

$$x''(t) = f(t, x, x'), \quad t \in [t_0, t_N], \quad (511)$$

we need two conditions

$$x(t_0) = x_0, \quad (512a)$$

$$x'(t_0) = x'_0. \quad (512b)$$

Note that it is still an IVP, since these two conditions are given at time  $t_0$ . If, however, we prescribe the solution at two different points  $t_0$  and  $t_N$  then we have a boundary value problem:

$$x'' = f(t, x, x'), \quad x(t_0) = x_0, \quad x(t_N) = x_N, \quad t \in [t_0, t_N].$$

1523 **19.1 The shooting method**

1524 **19.1.1 Linear case**

1525 Let us consider a second order ODE of the form

$$x'' + c(t)x' + d(t)x = g(t), \quad t \in [t_0, t_N] \quad (513a)$$

subject to the boundary conditions

$$x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad (513b)$$

$$x(t_N) = \beta. \quad (513c)$$

1526 Our goal is to solve BVP (513a)-(513c). Up to now, we have used numerical methods to solve  
1527 initial value problems. Can we use the same methods to solve boundary value problems? Let us try  
1528 it. For this, we replace the boundary conditions (513) with the initial conditions:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t_0) &= \alpha, \\ x'(t_0) &= \gamma, \end{aligned} \quad (514)$$

where  $\gamma$  is unknown. We now have to solve the IVP

$$x'' + c(t)x' + d(t)x = g(t), \quad t \in [t_0, t_N], \quad (515a)$$

$$x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad (515b)$$

$$x'(t_0) = \gamma. \quad (515c)$$

1529 Let the solution of this IVP be  $\omega(t)$ . The solution  $\omega(t_N)$  can be thought of as an estimation of  
1530 the solution  $x(t_N)$ . In general,  $\omega(t_N) \neq x(t_N)$ . Therefore, we now solve IVP (515) with another  
1531 set of initial conditions  $x(t_0) = \alpha$ ,  $x'(t_0) = \delta$  to compute another approximated solution, which we  
1532 denote by  $r(t)$ . Again, in general  $r(t_N) \neq x(t_N)$ .

1533 Now, we take a linear combination of both solutions

$$x(t) = \theta\omega(t) + (1 - \theta)r(t), \quad (516)$$

1534 which is the solution of BVP (513a)-(513c) with  $\theta$  chosen so that  $x(t_N)$  fulfills (513c). Assuming  
1535 that  $\omega(t_N) \neq r(t_N)$ , we can isolate  $\theta$  from (542):

$$\theta = \frac{x(t_N) - r(t_N)}{\omega(t_N) - r(t_N)} = \frac{\beta - r(t_N)}{\omega(t_N) - r(t_N)}. \quad (517)$$

1536 **19.1.2 Nonlinear case**

Let us consider the general nonlinear equation of the form

$$x'' = f(t, x, x'), \quad t \in [t_0, t_N], \quad (518a)$$

$$x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad (518b)$$

$$x(t_N) = \beta. \quad (518c)$$

1537 Following the procedure considered in the linear case, we replace the last boundary value (518c)  
1538 with the initial condition

$$x'(t_0) = s, \quad (518d)$$

1539 where  $s$  is unknown.

Starting with a first guess for  $s$ , we solve (518a) subject to the initial conditions

$$x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad (519a)$$

$$x'(t_0) = s, \quad (519b)$$

1540 and denote its solution by  $x(t, s)$ , which is an estimation of the boundary condition  $x(t_N) = \beta$ . Our  
1541 goal is to find a value of  $s$ , say  $s^*$ , such that  $x(t, s^*) = \beta$ . In contrast with the linear case, finding  
1542 the value of  $s^*$  requires the solution of a nonlinear algebraic equation. To solve this equation, we  
1543 transform the second order ODE (518a) and the initial conditions (519) into a system of second  
1544 order. For this, we use the change of variables

$$\begin{aligned} u(t, s) &= x(t, s), \\ v(t, s) &= \frac{\partial x(t, s)}{\partial t}. \end{aligned} \quad (520)$$

Hence, we can rewrite (518a) and (519) as follows:

$$\frac{\partial u(t, s)}{\partial t} = v(t, s), \quad (521a)$$

$$\frac{\partial v(t, s)}{\partial t} = f(t, u(t, s), v(t, s)), \quad (521b)$$

$$u(t_0, s) = \alpha, \quad (521c)$$

$$v(t_0, s) = s. \quad (521d)$$

1545 The solution  $u(t, s)$  of the initial value problem (521) coincides with the solution of BVP (518a)-  
1546 (518c) provided that we can find a value of  $s$  such that

$$\varphi(s) = u(t_N, s) - \beta = 0. \quad (522)$$

1547 The nonlinear equation (522) can be solved with any standard method for nonlinear equations. We  
 1548 will consider two methods: the method of bisection and the Newton method.

1549

### The method of bisection

Let us suppose that we have already solved the initial value problem (521) for two different values  $s_1$  and  $s_2$ . Thus, we have

$$\varphi(s_1) = u(t_N, s_1) - \beta, \quad (523a)$$

$$\varphi(s_2) = u(t_N, s_2) - \beta. \quad (523b)$$

1550 Let us assume that

$$\varphi(s_1) < 0 \text{ and } \varphi(s_2) > 0. \quad (524)$$

1551 If this is not the case, then one should take a larger interval  $[s_1, s_2]$ . We also assume, for the sake  
 1552 of definiteness, that  $s_1 < s_2$ .

1553 Given that the solution of the initial value problem (521) depends continuously on the initial  
 1554 data, there exists at least one value of  $s$  in the interval  $[s_1, s_2]$  such that  $\varphi(s) = 0$ . Thus, the in-  
 1555 terval  $[s_1, s_2]$  contains the root of equation (522). This root can be found by the method of bisection.

1556

1557 Take the midpoint, say  $s_3$ , of the interval  $[s_1, s_2]$  and solve IVP (521) with  $v(t_0, s) = s_3$ . Its  
 1558 solution at time  $t_N$  is  $u(t_N, s_3)$ . Now compute  $\varphi(s_3) = u(t_N, s_3) - \beta$ .

1559 If  $\varphi(s_3) = 0$  then the  $s_3$  is the root, and we stop the computation.

1560 If  $\varphi(s_3) > 0$  then the interval  $[s_1, s_3]$  contains the root of  $\varphi(s)$ , and we have to take the midpoint  
 1561 of this interval,  $s_4$  and solve the IVP again with  $v(t_0, s) = s_4$ .

1562 If  $\varphi(s_3) < 0$  then the interval  $[s_3, s_2]$  contains the root of  $\varphi(s)$ , and we have to take the midpoint  
 1563 of this interval,  $s_4$  and solve the IVP again with  $v(t_0, s) = s_4$ .

1564 Repeating this process, one can construct a sequence of numbers  $\{s_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  converging to the root  
 1565  $s$ . In practice, the bisection is terminated after a finite number of steps when the length of the  
 1566 interval containing  $s$  has become sufficiently small.

1567

### The Newton method

1568 To solve the equation

$$\varphi(s) = 0 \quad (525)$$

1569 one can use the Newton method

$$s_{n+1} = s_n - \frac{\varphi(s_n)}{\varphi'(s_n)}, \quad (526)$$

1570 with the starting value  $s_0$ . A suitable  $s_0$  can be found by performing a few steps of the method of  
 1571 bisection. The Newton method has quadratic convergence, and hence it is much faster than the  
 1572 method of bisection. The first question is how to find  $\varphi'(s_n)$ . In order to do it, we introduce new  
 1573 variables

$$\xi(t, s) = \frac{\partial u(t, s)}{\partial s}, \quad \eta(t, s) = \frac{\partial v(t, s)}{\partial s}, \quad (527)$$

and differentiate IVP (521) with respect to  $s$

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t \partial s} = \frac{\partial v(t, s)}{\partial s} \Rightarrow \frac{\partial \xi}{\partial t} = \eta, \quad (528a)$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial t \partial s} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial u} \frac{\partial u}{\partial s} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial v} \frac{\partial v}{\partial s} \Rightarrow \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial u} \xi + \frac{\partial f}{\partial v} \eta, \quad (528b)$$

$$\frac{\partial u(t_0, s)}{\partial s} = 0 \Rightarrow \xi(t_0, s) = 0, \quad (528c)$$

$$\frac{\partial v(t_0, s)}{\partial s} = 1 \Rightarrow \eta(t_0, s) = 1. \quad (528d)$$

1575 Then, we solve IVP (521) with  $v(t_0, s) = s_n$  to get  $u(t_N, s_n)$  from which we can calculate  $\varphi(s_n) =$   
1576  $u(t_N, s_n) - \beta$ , and in addition, we obtain  $\varphi'(s_n) = \xi(t_N, s_n)$ . Having computed  $\varphi(s_n)$  and  $\varphi'(s_n)$ ,  
1577 we can compute the next iteration

$$s_{n+1} = s_n - \frac{\varphi(s_n)}{\varphi'(s_n)}. \quad (529)$$

1578 This process is repeated until

$$\frac{|s_{n+1} - s_n|}{|s_{n+1}|} < \varepsilon, \quad (530)$$

1579 where  $\varepsilon$  is a given tolerance. Note that we have to solve a coupled system of two IVPs (521)  
1580 and (528) in each iteration of the Newton method.

## 1581 Lecture 20 Finite Difference Method

1582 The idea behind the Finite Difference Method (FDM) is to approximate derivatives in the differential  
1583 equation by linear combinations of function values at grid points.

### 1584 20.1 1D case

1585 Let us consider an ODE of the form

$$a(t) \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + b(t) \frac{dx}{dt} + c(t)x = d(t), \quad t \in [t_0, t_N], \quad (531)$$

1586 where  $a(t)$ ,  $b(t)$ ,  $c(t)$  are some real-valued functions. Consider the Dirichlet BVP (the solution is  
1587 given on the boundary)

$$x(t_0) = \alpha, \quad x(t_N) = \beta. \quad (532)$$

1588 In order to use the FDM, we need to introduce a grid

$$t_i = ih, \quad \frac{t_0 - t_N}{N}, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, N. \quad (533)$$

1589 Now, we can approximate the 1st and 2nd order derivatives in (531). Let us use the central difference  
1590 approximation (scheme) for both the first and second order derivatives:

$$a_i \frac{x_{i+1} - 2x_i + x_{i-1}}{h^2} + b_i \frac{x_{i+1} - x_{i-1}}{2h} + c_i x_i = d_i, \quad (534)$$

with  $i = 1, 2, \dots, N - 1$ , and we set  $x_0 = \alpha$  and  $x_N = \beta$ .

$$i=1 \quad a_1 \frac{x_2 - 2x_1 + \overbrace{x_0}^{\alpha}}{h^2} + b_1 \frac{x_2 - \overbrace{x_0}^{\alpha}}{2h} + c_1 x_1 = d_1, \quad (535a)$$

$$i=2 \quad a_2 \frac{x_3 - 2x_2 + x_1}{h^2} + b_2 \frac{x_3 - x_1}{2h} + c_2 x_2 = d_2, \quad (535b)$$

$$i=3 \quad a_3 \frac{x_4 - 2x_3 + x_2}{h^2} + b_3 \frac{x_4 - x_2}{2h} + c_3 x_3 = d_3, \quad (535c)$$

$$\dots \quad (535d)$$

$$i=N-1 \quad a_{N-1} \frac{\overbrace{x_N}^{\beta} - 2x_{N-1} + x_{N-2}}{h^2} + b_{N-1} \frac{\overbrace{x_N}^{\beta} - x_{N-2}}{2h} + c_{N-1} x_{N-1} = d_{N-1}. \quad (535e)$$

1591 We can also write the linear system of equations (535) in the matrix form  $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$ , i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \begin{array}{cccccc} -\frac{2a_1}{h^2} + c_1 & \frac{a_1}{h^2} + \frac{b_1}{2h} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{a_2}{h^2} - \frac{b_2}{2h} & -\frac{2a_2}{h^2} + c_2 & \frac{a_2}{h^2} + \frac{b_2}{2h} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{a_3}{h^2} - \frac{b_3}{2h} & -\frac{2a_3}{h^2} + c_3 & \frac{a_3}{h^2} + \frac{b_3}{2h} & 0 & 0 \\ \dots & & & & & \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{a_{N-1}}{h^2} - \frac{b_{N-1}}{2h} & -\frac{2a_{N-1}}{h^2} + c_{N-1} \\ \end{array} \right) \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ \dots \\ x_{N-1} \end{pmatrix} \\ & = \begin{pmatrix} d_1 - \left( \frac{a_1 \alpha}{h^2} + \frac{b_1 \alpha}{2h} \right) \\ d_2 \\ d_3 \\ \dots \\ d_{N-1} - \left( \frac{a_{N-1} \beta}{h^2} + \frac{b_{N-1} \beta}{2h} \right) \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (536)$$

1592 Note that the matrix is of size  $(N - 1) \times (N - 1)$ , since the solution is given on the left and right  
1593 boundaries, and we do not have to compute it.

1594 Let us consider the Neumann BVP and study how the system of linear equations changes. The  
1595 Neumann boundary condition is a boundary condition that specifies the derivative of the solution:

$$\frac{dx}{dt} \Big|_{t=t_0} = \alpha, \quad \frac{dx}{dt} \Big|_{t=t_N} = \beta. \quad (537)$$

If we approximate the derivative on the boundary with the central difference scheme we have

$$\frac{dx}{dt} \approx \frac{x_{i+1} - x_{i-1}}{2h}.$$

1596 Therefore, at  $t = t_0$  we have

$$\frac{x_{i+1} - x_{i-1}}{2h} = \alpha \Rightarrow x_{i-1} = x_{i+1} - 2\alpha h. \quad (538)$$

1597 and at  $t = t_N$  we get

$$\frac{x_{i+1} - x_{i-1}}{2h} = \beta \Rightarrow x_{i+1} = x_{i-1} + 2\beta h. \quad (539)$$

1598 Thus, for  $i = 0$  we have

$$a_0 \frac{x_1 - 2x_0 - x_{-1}}{h^2} + b_0 \frac{x_1 - x_{-1}}{2h} + c_0 x_0 = d_0. \quad (540)$$

1599 Using (538) in (540) gives

$$a_0 \frac{x_1 - 2x_0 - (x_1 - 2\alpha h)}{h^2} + b_0 \frac{x_1 - (x_1 - 2\alpha h)}{2h} + c_0 x_0 = d_0. \quad (541)$$

1600 For  $i = N$  we have

$$a_N \frac{x_{N+1} - 2x_N + x_{N-1}}{h^2} + b_N \frac{x_{N+1} - x_{N-1}}{2h} + c_N x_N = d_N. \quad (542)$$

1601 Using (539) in (542) gives

$$a_N \frac{(x_{N-1} + 2\beta h) - 2x_N + x_{N-1}}{h^2} + b_N \frac{(x_{N-1} + 2\beta h) - x_{N-1}}{2h} + c_N x_N = d_N. \quad (543)$$

1602 Thus, the system of equations (536) becomes of size  $N \times N$ , and the first and the last rows of the  
1603 matrix and the right hand side are defined by equations (541) and (543), respectively.

## 1604 20.2 The method of undetermined coefficients

1605 The method of undetermined coefficients within the context of finite difference approximations is  
1606 used to find an approximation to a derivative with a given order of accuracy. Suppose we have  
1607 to approximate  $\frac{dx(t_n)}{dt}$  with a third order of accuracy using information at points  $x(t_n)$ ,  $x(t_{n-1})$ ,  
1608 and  $x(t_{n-2})$ . The first step of the method of undetermined coefficients is to fix the form of the  
1609 approximation. Let it be

$$\frac{dx(t_n)}{dt} = ax(t_n) + bx(t_{n-1}) + cx(t_{n-2}). \quad (544)$$

The next step is to Taylor expand  $x(t_{n-1})$  and  $x(t_{n-2})$  about  $t_n$

$$x(t_{n-1}) = x(t_n) - hx'(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t_n) + O(h^3), \quad (545a)$$

$$x(t_{n-2}) = x(t_n) - 2hx'(t_n) + 2h^2x''(t_n) + O(h^3), \quad (545b)$$

and plug these expansions into (544)

$$\frac{dx(t_n)}{dt} = ax(t_n) + b \left( x(t_n) - hx'(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}x''(t_n) \right) + c \left( x(t_n) - 2hx'(t_n) + 2h^2x''(t_n) \right) + O(h^3) \quad (546a)$$

$$= (a + b + c)x(t_n) - (b + 2c)hx'(t_n) + \frac{h^2}{2}(b + 4c)x''(t_n) + O(h^3). \quad (546b)$$

In order to have a third order approximation to  $x'(t_n)$ , we have to solve the system

$$a + b + c = 0, \quad (547a)$$

$$b + 2c = -\frac{1}{h}, \quad (547b)$$

$$b + 4c = 0. \quad (547c)$$

<sub>1610</sub> The solution is

$$a = \frac{3}{2h}, \quad b = -\frac{2}{h}, \quad c = \frac{1}{2h}. \quad (548)$$

Thus, the finite difference approximation of  $\frac{dx(t_n)}{dt}$  is

$$\frac{dx(t_n)}{dt} \approx \frac{3}{2h}x(t_n) - \frac{2}{h}x(t_{n-1}) + \frac{1}{2h}x(t_{n-2}).$$

<sub>1611</sub> Can you check that this approximation is of order 3?

## 1612 Lecture 21 Partial differential equations

1613 In this lecture we focus on how to use the methods studied in the course for partial differential  
1614 equations. Before going into details, it is instructive to introduce some definitions.

1615 **Definition 21.1 (Consistency)** A finite difference scheme  $P_h u_h = f$  is called consistent with a  
1616 partial differential equation  $Pu(t, x) = f(t, x)$  if  $\|P_h u_h - Pu\| \rightarrow 0$  as  $h \rightarrow 0$ , where  $P$  is a  
1617 differential operator and  $h = (\Delta t, \Delta x)$ .

1618 **Definition 21.2 (Stability)** A finite difference scheme is called stable for a partial differential  
1619 equation if the numerical solution remains bounded as the space and time steps tend to zero.

1620 **Theorem 21.1 (The Lax-Richtmyer equivalence theorem)** A consistent finite difference scheme  
1621 for a well-posed linear BVP is convergent if and only if it is stable.

1622 This theorem is the analog of the Dahlquist equivalence theorem for ordinary differential equations.

1623 Let us consider a one-dimensional partial differential equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = -c \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \quad t \in [0, T], \quad x \in [0, L], \quad c = \text{const} \quad (549)$$

1624 subject to initial and boundary conditions. In order to solve this equation numerically, we have to  
1625 approximate it in both space and time. For space approximation we will use the finite difference  
1626 method, while for time approximation we can use any method studied in the course. For this, we  
1627 introduce the following space grid

$$x_i = i\Delta x, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, M, \quad \Delta x = \frac{L}{M}, \quad (550)$$

1628 and the time grid

$$t_i = n\Delta t, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, N, \quad \Delta t = \frac{T}{N}, \quad (551)$$

1629 where  $\Delta x$  and  $\Delta t$  are the space and time steps, respectively.

1630 Let us use the central difference to approximate the space derivative in (549), namely

$$\frac{du_i}{dt} = -c \frac{u_{i+1} - u_{i-1}}{2\Delta x}, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, M. \quad (552)$$

1631 Note that this is a semi-discrete system of equations, since it is only approximated in space; the  
1632 sub-index refers to the space approximation. To solve this equation, we can use one of the methods  
1633 studied in the course. Let us use the Euler method

$$u_i^{n+1} = u_i^n - \Delta t c \frac{u_{i+1}^n - u_{i-1}^n}{2\Delta x}, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, M, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, N. \quad (553)$$

1634 Here, the super index refers to the time approximation.

1635 As with numerical methods for ODEs, we have to ensure that the proposed method is convergent,  
1636 otherwise it is of no use to us. In order to check whether the method is convergent we will consider  
1637 different approaches.

### 1638 21.1 Von Neumann stability analysis (Fourier stability analysis)

1639 Let us assume that a numerical scheme admits a solution of the form

$$u_j^n = \zeta^n(k) e^{ikj\Delta x}, \quad (554)$$

1640 where  $i = \sqrt{-1}$ , and  $k$  is the wave number defined as

$$k = \frac{\pi j}{L}, \quad j = 0, \dots, M, \quad M = \frac{L}{\Delta x}. \quad (555)$$

1641 Define the amplification factor

$$\zeta(k) = \frac{\zeta^{n+1}(k)}{\zeta^n(k)}. \quad (556)$$

1642 Then, the von Neumann stability condition is given by

$$|\zeta(k)| \leq 1, \quad \forall k. \quad (557)$$

1643 In other words, if this condition is met then the numerical method is stable.

In order to check (557) we substitute  $u_j^n$  into (553) and get

$$\zeta^{n+1} e^{ikj\Delta x} = \zeta^n e^{ikj\Delta x} - c \frac{\zeta^n e^{ik(j+1)\Delta x} - \zeta^n e^{ik(j-1)\Delta x}}{2\Delta x} \Delta t, \quad (558a)$$

$$|\zeta(k)| = \left| \frac{\zeta^{n+1}}{\zeta^n} \right| = \left| 1 - \lambda(e^{ik\Delta x} - e^{-ik\Delta x}) \right|, \quad \lambda := \frac{c\Delta t}{2\Delta x} \quad (558b)$$

$$= \left| 1 - \lambda(\cos(k\Delta x) + i \sin(k\Delta x) - \cos(k\Delta x) + i \sin(k\Delta x)) \right|, \quad (558c)$$

$$= \left| 1 - \frac{c\Delta t}{\Delta x} i \sin(k\Delta x) \right| \quad (558d)$$

$$= \sqrt{1 + \left( -\frac{c\Delta t}{\Delta x} \sin(k\Delta x) \right)^2} > 1. \quad (558e)$$

1644 Thus the scheme is unstable, and cannot therefore be used to solve the equation. However, this 1645 scheme can be made stable by the Lax substitution.

### 1646 21.1.1 The Lax substitution

1647 The idea behind the Lax substitution is to replace  $u_j^n$  with

$$u_j^n = \frac{u_{j+1}^n + u_{j-1}^n}{2}. \quad (559)$$

1648 Substitution of (559) into (553) gives

$$u_j^{n+1} = \frac{u_{j+1}^n + u_{j-1}^n}{2} - \frac{c\Delta t}{2\Delta x} (u_{j+1}^n - u_{j-1}^n). \quad (560)$$

1649 Thus, the amplification factor becomes

$$|\zeta| = \left| \cos(k\Delta x) - i \frac{c\Delta t}{\Delta x} \sin(k\Delta x) \right| \leq 1, \quad (561)$$

1650 if

$$\Delta t \leq \frac{\Delta x}{c}. \quad (562)$$

1651 This condition is known as the Courant–Friedrichs–Lowy (CFL) condition. Physically, the CFL 1652 condition means that the distance the fluid particle (or the wave as in our case) can cover during 1653 one time step must not exceed the space step size  $\Delta x$  (i.e. the grid must “see” the movement of 1654 the wave).

To see the effect of the Lax substitution onto the PDE, we rewrite (560) in the form:

$$\frac{u_j^{n+1} - u_j^n}{\Delta t} = -c \frac{u_{j+1}^n - u_{j-1}^n}{2\Delta x} + \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{2\Delta t} \frac{u_{j+1}^n - 2u_j^n + u_{j-1}^n}{(\Delta x)^2} \quad (563a)$$

$$\text{since } \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \approx \frac{u_{j+1}^n - 2u_j^n + u_{j-1}^n}{(\Delta x)^2} \text{ we have} \quad (563b)$$

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = -c \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{2\Delta t} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \quad (563c)$$

1655 The last term in the equation is called dissipation. It inhibits growing modes and keeps the numerical  
 1656 scheme stable. However, such an artificial dissipation (it is artificial, since it is not a part of the  
 1657 original PDE) can significantly contaminate the solution, i.e. it can dissipate too much. To get rid  
 1658 off the numerical dissipation, one can use the Leap-frog scheme.

### 1659 21.1.2 Leap-frog scheme

1660 As we know from the course (see equation (214) on page 38), the Leap-frog scheme for the ODE  
 1661  $x' = f(t, x)$  is given by

$$x_{n+1} - x_{n-1} = 2hf_n, \quad h = \Delta t. \quad (564)$$

Using (564) in equation (552) gives

$$\frac{u_j^{n+1} - u_j^{n-1}}{2\Delta t} = -c \frac{u_{j+1}^n - u_{j-1}^n}{2\Delta x}, \quad (565a)$$

$$u_j^{n+1} - u_j^{n-1} = -\frac{c\Delta t}{\Delta x} (u_{j+1}^n - u_{j-1}^n). \quad (565b)$$

Substitution of  $u_j^n = \zeta^n e^{ikj\Delta x}$  into (565b) results in

$$\zeta^{n+1} e^{ikj\Delta x} - \zeta^{n-1} e^{ikj\Delta x} = -\frac{c\Delta t}{\Delta x} \zeta^n (e^{ik(j+1)\Delta x} - e^{ik(j-1)\Delta x}) \quad (566a)$$

$$\frac{\zeta^{n+1}}{\zeta^{n-1}} - 1 = -\frac{c\Delta t}{\Delta x} \zeta 2i \sin(k\Delta x) \quad (566b)$$

$$\zeta^2 = 1 - \frac{c\Delta t}{\Delta x} \zeta 2i \sin(k\Delta x) \quad (566c)$$

we have to solve the quadratic equation to find  $\zeta$  (566d)

$$\zeta_{1,2} = -i \frac{c\Delta t}{\Delta x} \sin(k\Delta x) \pm \sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{c\Delta t}{\Delta x} \sin(k\Delta x)\right)^2}. \quad (566e)$$

1662 Thus we have

$$|\zeta_{1,2}| = 1, \quad \text{if } \Delta t \leq \frac{\Delta x}{c}. \quad (567)$$

1663 This means that there is no diffusion for the the Leapfrog scheme. Note that if  $|\zeta| < 1$  then there is  
 1664 a dissipation, and if  $|\zeta| > 1$  than the modes amplitude grow. However, the Leap-from scheme still  
 1665 requires the CFL condition to ensure its stability. Is there a method that can offer an unconditionally  
 1666 stable scheme?

### 1667 21.1.3 The Backward Euler method

1668 Let us apply the Backward Euler method to equation (549) and analyse the stability of the numerical  
 1669 scheme. The backward Euler method for the equation  $x' = f(t, x)$  is given by  $x_{n+1} = x_n + hf_{n+1}$ ,

1670 where  $h = \Delta t$ . Using the Backward Euler method in (552) leads to

$$\frac{u_j^{n+1} - u_j^n}{\Delta t} = -c \frac{u_{j+1}^{n+1} - u_{j-1}^{n+1}}{2\Delta x}. \quad (568)$$

1671 Note that the right hand side of equation (568) depends on the solution at time  $t_{n+1}$ . This is  
1672 because the Backward Euler method is an implicit method.

1673 Substitution of  $u_j^n = \zeta^n e^{ikj\Delta x}$  into (568) gives

$$\zeta^{n+1} e^{ikj\Delta x} = \zeta^n e^{ikj\Delta x} - \lambda \zeta^{n+1} (e^{i(j+1)k\Delta x} - e^{i(j-1)k\Delta x}), \quad \lambda := \frac{c\Delta t}{2\Delta x}. \quad (569)$$

Dividing (569) by  $\zeta^n e^{ikj\Delta x}$  yields

$$\zeta = 1 - \lambda \zeta (e^{ik\Delta x} - e^{-ik\Delta x}) \Rightarrow \left(1 + \lambda (e^{ik\Delta x} - e^{-ik\Delta x})\right) \zeta = 1 \quad (570a)$$

$$\zeta = \frac{1}{1 + \lambda 2i \sin(k\Delta x)} \quad (570b)$$

$$|\zeta| = \left| \frac{1}{1 + \frac{c\Delta t}{2\Delta x} 2i \sin(k\Delta x)} \right| \leq 1 \quad (570c)$$

$$|\zeta| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1^2 + \left(\frac{c\Delta t}{\Delta x}\right)^2 \sin^2(k\Delta x)}} \leq 1 \text{ for all } \Delta t \text{ and } \Delta x, \quad (570d)$$

1674 since  $\sqrt{1^2 + \left(\frac{c\Delta t}{\Delta x}\right)^2 \sin^2(k\Delta x)} \geq 1$  for all  $\Delta t$  and  $\Delta x$ . A numerical scheme the stability of which  
1675 does not depend on the time and space steps is called absolutely stable. Thus, the Backward Euler  
1676 method and the central difference approximation of the first order space derivative is an absolutely  
1677 stable scheme for equation (549).

1678 Although von Neumann stability analysis allows to analyse the stability of numerical methods,  
1679 it is restricted to linear equations with constant coefficients, and does not account for boundary  
1680 conditions. The matrix stability analysis is free of some of these shortcomings, but as von Neumann  
1681 analysis it works for linear equations or systems of equations.

## 1683 21.2 The matrix stability analysis

1684 The matrix stability analysis can be used for linear equations of the form

$$\frac{d\mathbf{u}}{dt} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{b}, \quad (571)$$

1685 where  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{M \times M}$  is a constant matrix,  $\mathbf{b} \in \mathbb{R}^{M \times 1}$  is a constant vector, and  $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}(t)$  is a vector  
1686 function. Equation (571) is a semi-discrete system of equation akin to (552). Since  $\mathbf{b}$  is a constant  
1687 vector, the behaviour of the solution is essentially determined by the eigenvalues of matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ , and  
1688 therefore we can study a homogeneous equation of the form

$$\frac{d\mathbf{u}}{dt} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{u}, \quad (572)$$

1689 and use the stability analysis for systems of ODEs (see lecture 10, page 57).

## 1690 Lecture 22 The energy method (The method of energy inequalities) by example

1691 The energy method (also known as the method of energy inequalities) is free of shortcoming of von  
 1692 Neumann analysis and the matrix stability analysis, and can be applied to nonlinear equations both  
 1693 continuous and discrete. The principle behind the energy method is to show that the solution of a  
 1694 given problem is bounded by something that we can control.

1695 Let us consider an ODE of the form

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + f(x) = 0, \quad x \in [0, 1], \quad y(0) = y(1) = 0. \quad (573)$$

1696 Here,  $f(x)$  is a function of  $x$ . The application of the Finite Difference method (approximate the  
 1697 derivative with the central difference scheme) to (573) results in

$$\frac{y_{i+1} - 2y_i + y_{i-1}}{h^2} + f_i = 0, \quad y_0 = y_N = 0, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, N, \quad h = \frac{1}{N}. \quad (574)$$

1698 Using the notation

$$y_x = \frac{y_{i+1} - y_i}{h}, \quad y_{\bar{x}} = \frac{y_i - y_{i-1}}{h}, \quad (575)$$

1699 multiplying (574) by  $hy$ , and summing up over the grid nodes  $i$  we have

$$\sum_{i=1}^{N-1} (y_{\bar{x}x})_i y_i h + \sum_{i=1}^{N-1} f_i y_i h = 0, \quad (576)$$

1700 which can be recast in terms of the scalar product as follows:

$$(y_{\bar{x}x}, y) + (f, y) = 0, \quad (577)$$

1701 or

$$-(y_{\bar{x}}, y_{\bar{x}}) + (f, y) = 0, \quad (578)$$

1702 where  $(u, v) = h \sum_{i=1}^N u_i v_i$ .

1703 **Can you show that (577) can be written as (578)?**

1704  
 1705 In terms of  $l_2$ -norm,  $\|u\|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^N u_i^2$  and  $\|u\|^2 = \sum_{i=1}^{N-1} u_i^2$ , equation (578) becomes

$$\|y_{\bar{x}}\|^2 = (f, y), \quad (579)$$

1706 Using the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality ( $|(f, y)| \leq \|f\| \|y\|$ ) on the right hand side we have

$$\|y_{\bar{x}}\|^2 \leq \|f\| \|y\|. \quad (580)$$

1707 To proceed we need

1708 **Lemma 22.1** For any continuous function  $y(x)$  defined on an equidistant grid

$$\omega_h = \{x_i = ih, i = 0, 1, \dots, N, \quad x_0 = 0, x_N = l\}, \quad (581)$$

1709 and  $y(x_0) = 0, y(x_N) = 0$ , the following estimate holds

$$\frac{h^2}{4} \|y_{\bar{x}}\|^2 \leq \|y\|^2 \leq \frac{l^2}{8} \|y_{\bar{x}}\|^2. \quad (582)$$

<sub>1710</sub> **Lemma 22.2** *For any continuous function  $y(x)$  defined on the grid*

$$\omega_h = \{x_i = ih, 0 \leq i \leq N, x_0 = 0, x_N = l\}, \quad (583)$$

<sub>1711</sub> *and  $y(x_0) = y(x_N) = 0$ , the following estimation holds*

$$\|y\|_c \leq \frac{\|y_{\bar{x}}]\|}{2}, \quad \|y\|_c = \max_{x \in \omega_h} |y(x)|. \quad (584)$$

<sub>1712</sub> Based on Lemma 22.1 ( $l = 1$  in our case), we have

$$\|y_{\bar{x}}]\| \leq \frac{\|f\|}{\sqrt{8}}, \quad (585)$$

<sub>1713</sub> while using Lemma 22.2 in inequality (585) gives

$$\|y\|_c \leq \frac{\|f\|}{2\sqrt{8}}. \quad (586)$$

<sub>1714</sub> Thus we have shown that the solution  $y$  does not grow if  $\|f\|$  is bounded.